

latexindent.pl



Version  
3.17.2

Chris Hughes \*

2022-04-14

`latexindent.pl` is a Perl script that indents `.tex` (and other) files according to an indentation scheme that the user can modify to suit their taste. Environments, including those with alignment delimiters (such as `tabular`), and commands, including those that can split braces and brackets across lines, are *usually* handled correctly by the script. Options for `verbatim`-like environments and commands, together with indentation after headings (such as `chapter`, `section`, etc) are also available. The script also has the ability to modify line breaks, and to add comment symbols and blank lines; furthermore, it permits string or regex-based substitutions. All user options are customisable via the switches and the YAML interface.

A quick start guide is given in Section 1.3 on page 5.



## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1	Thanks . . . . .	5
1.2	License . . . . .	5
1.3	Quick start . . . . .	5
1.4	Required perl modules . . . . .	8
1.5	About this documentation . . . . .	9
1.6	A word about regular expressions . . . . .	10
<b>2</b>	<b>Demonstration: before and after</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>How to use the script</b>	<b>12</b>
3.1	From the command line . . . . .	12
3.2	From arara . . . . .	19
3.3	Summary of exit codes . . . . .	19
<b>4</b>	<b>indentconfig.yaml, local settings and the -y switch</b>	<b>20</b>
4.1	indentconfig.yaml and .indentconfig.yaml . . . . .	20
4.2	localSettings.yaml and friends . . . . .	21

\*and contributors! See Section 11.5 on page 135. For all communication, please visit [28].



4.3	The -y yaml switch . . . . .	22
4.4	Settings load order . . . . .	23
<b>5</b>	<b>defaultSettings.yaml</b> . . . . .	<b>24</b>
5.1	Backup and log file preferences . . . . .	24
5.2	Verbatim code blocks . . . . .	26
5.3	filecontents and preamble . . . . .	29
5.4	Indentation and horizontal space . . . . .	30
5.5	Aligning at delimiters . . . . .	30
5.5.1	lookForAlignDelims: spacesBeforeAmpersand . . . . .	35
5.5.2	lookForAlignDelims: alignFinalDoubleBackSlash . . . . .	36
5.5.3	lookForAlignDelims: the dontMeasure feature . . . . .	37
5.5.4	lookForAlignDelims: the delimiterRegEx and delimiterJustification feature . . . . .	39
5.5.5	lookForAlignDelims: lookForChildCodeBlocks . . . . .	41
5.6	Indent after items, specials and headings . . . . .	42
5.7	The code blocks known latexindent.pl . . . . .	48
5.8	noAdditionalIndent and indentRules . . . . .	50
5.8.1	Environments and their arguments . . . . .	50
5.8.2	Environments with items . . . . .	57
5.8.3	Commands with arguments . . . . .	58
5.8.4	ifelsefi code blocks . . . . .	60
5.8.5	specialBeginEnd code blocks . . . . .	61
5.8.6	afterHeading code blocks . . . . .	62
5.8.7	The remaining code blocks . . . . .	64
5.8.7.1	keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets . . . . .	64
5.8.7.2	namedGroupingBracesBrackets . . . . .	65
5.8.7.3	UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets . . . . .	65
5.8.7.4	filecontents . . . . .	66
5.8.8	Summary . . . . .	66
5.9	Commands and the strings between their arguments . . . . .	66
<b>6</b>	<b>The -m (modifylinebreaks) switch</b> . . . . .	<b>72</b>
6.1	Text Wrapping . . . . .	73
6.1.1	Text wrap: overview . . . . .	74
6.1.2	Text wrap: simple examples . . . . .	75
6.1.3	Text wrap: blocksFollow examples . . . . .	76
6.1.4	Text wrap: blocksBeginWith examples . . . . .	80
6.1.5	Text wrap: blocksEndBefore examples . . . . .	81
6.1.6	Text wrap: huge, tabstop and separator . . . . .	82
6.2	oneSentencePerLine: modifying line breaks for sentences . . . . .	84
6.2.1	sentencesFollow . . . . .	86
6.2.2	sentencesBeginWith . . . . .	87
6.2.3	sentencesEndWith . . . . .	87
6.2.4	Features of the oneSentencePerLine routine . . . . .	89
6.2.5	Text wrapping and indenting sentences . . . . .	90
6.3	Poly-switches . . . . .	92
6.3.1	Poly-switches for environments . . . . .	93
6.3.1.1	Adding line breaks: BeginStartsOnOwnLine and BodyStartsOnOwnLine . . . . .	93
6.3.1.2	Adding line breaks using EndStartsOnOwnLine and EndFinishesWithLineBreak . . . . .	95
6.3.1.3	poly-switches 1, 2, and 3 only add line breaks when necessary . . . . .	96
6.3.1.4	Removing line breaks (poly-switches set to -1) . . . . .	97
6.3.1.5	About trailing horizontal space . . . . .	98
6.3.1.6	poly-switch line break removal and blank lines . . . . .	99
6.3.2	Poly-switches for double back slash . . . . .	100
6.3.2.1	Double back slash starts on own line . . . . .	100
6.3.2.2	Double back slash finishes with line break . . . . .	101



6.3.2.3	Double back slash poly-switches for specialBeginEnd . . . . .	102
6.3.2.4	Double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments	102
6.3.2.5	Double back slash optional square brackets . . . . .	103
6.3.3	Poly-switches for other code blocks . . . . .	103
6.3.4	Partnering BodyStartsOnOwnLine with argument-based poly-switches . . . . .	105
6.3.5	Conflicting poly-switches: sequential code blocks . . . . .	106
6.3.6	Conflicting poly-switches: nested code blocks . . . . .	107
<b>7</b>	<b>The -r, -rv and -rr switches</b>	<b>109</b>
7.1	Introduction to replacements . . . . .	109
7.2	The two types of replacements . . . . .	110
7.3	Examples of replacements . . . . .	110
<b>8</b>	<b>The -lines switch</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Fine tuning</b>	<b>124</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Conclusions and known limitations</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>References</b>	<b>134</b>
11.1	perl-related links . . . . .	134
11.2	conda-related links . . . . .	134
11.3	Vscode-related links . . . . .	134
11.4	Other links . . . . .	134
11.5	Contributors (in chronological order) . . . . .	135
<b>A</b>	<b>Required Perl modules</b>	<b>136</b>
A.1	Module installer script . . . . .	136
A.2	Manually installing modules . . . . .	136
A.2.1	Linux . . . . .	136
A.2.1.1	perlbrew . . . . .	136
A.2.1.2	Ubuntu/Debian . . . . .	137
A.2.1.3	Ubuntu: using the texlive from apt-get . . . . .	137
A.2.1.4	Arch-based distributions . . . . .	137
A.2.1.5	Alpine . . . . .	137
A.2.2	Mac . . . . .	138
A.2.3	Windows . . . . .	138
A.3	The GCString switch . . . . .	138
<b>B</b>	<b>Updating the path variable</b>	<b>140</b>
B.1	Add to path for Linux . . . . .	140
B.2	Add to path for Windows . . . . .	140
<b>C</b>	<b>Batches of files</b>	<b>142</b>
C.1	location of indent.log . . . . .	142
C.2	interaction with -w switch . . . . .	142
C.3	interaction with -o switch . . . . .	142
C.4	interaction with lines switch . . . . .	143
C.5	interaction with check switches . . . . .	143
C.6	when a file does not exist . . . . .	143
<b>D</b>	<b>latexindent-yaml-schema.json</b>	<b>144</b>
D.1	VsCode demonstration . . . . .	144
<b>E</b>	<b>Using conda</b>	<b>145</b>
E.1	Sample conda installation on Ubuntu . . . . .	145
<b>F</b>	<b>pre-commit</b>	<b>146</b>
F.1	Sample pre-commit installation on Ubuntu . . . . .	146
F.2	pre-commit defaults . . . . .	146



E3	pre-commit using CPAN . . . . .	147
E4	pre-commit using conda . . . . .	147
E5	pre-commit example using -l, -m switches . . . . .	148
<b>G</b>	<b>logFilePreferences</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>H</b>	<b>Encoding indentconfig.yaml</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>I</b>	<b>dos2unix linebreak adjustment</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>J</b>	<b>Differences from Version 2.2 to 3.0</b>	<b>152</b>
	<b>List of listings</b>	<b>154</b>
	<b>Index</b>	<b>161</b>

# SECTION 1



## Introduction

### 1.1 Thanks

I first created `latexindent.pl` to help me format chapter files in a big project. After I blogged about it on the  $\text{\TeX}$  stack exchange [21] I received some positive feedback and follow-up feature requests. A big thank you to Harish Kumar [2] who helped to develop and test the initial versions of the script.

The YAML-based interface of `latexindent.pl` was inspired by the wonderful `arara` tool; any similarities are deliberate, and I hope that it is perceived as the compliment that it is. Thank you to Paulo Cereda and the team for releasing this awesome tool; I initially worried that I was going to have to make a GUI for `latexindent.pl`, but the release of `arara` has meant there is no need.

There have been several contributors to the project so far (and hopefully more in the future!); thank you very much to the people detailed in Section 11.5 on page 135 for their valued contributions, and thank you to those who report bugs and request features at [28].

### 1.2 License

`latexindent.pl` is free and open source, and it always will be; it is released under the GNU General Public License v3.0.

Before you start using it on any important files, bear in mind that `latexindent.pl` has the option to overwrite your `.tex` files. It will always make at least one backup (you can choose how many it makes, see page 25) but you should still be careful when using it. The script has been tested on many files, but there are some known limitations (see Section 10). You, the user, are responsible for ensuring that you maintain backups of your files before running `latexindent.pl` on them. I think it is important at this stage to restate an important part of the license here:

*This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.*

There is certainly no malicious intent in releasing this script, and I do hope that it works as you expect it to; if it does not, please first of all make sure that you have the correct settings, and then feel free to let me know at [28] with a complete minimum working example as I would like to improve the code as much as possible.



#### Warning!

Before you try the script on anything important (like your thesis), test it out on the sample files in the `test-case` directory [28].

*If you have used any version 2.\* of `latexindent.pl`, there are a few changes to the interface; see appendix J on page 152 and the comments throughout this document for details.*

### 1.3 Quick start

If you'd like to get started with `latexindent.pl` then simply type

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
```

from the command line.



We give an introduction to `latexindent.pl` using Listing 1; there is no explanation in this section, which is deliberate for a quick start. The rest of the manual is more verbose.

#### LISTING 1: quick-start.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for latexindent.pl.
\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\end{myenv}
```

Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 2.

#### LISTING 2: quick-start-default.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for latexindent.pl.
\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\end{myenv}
```

#### Example 1 Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l quick-start1.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 4.

#### LISTING 3: quick-start1.yaml

```
defaultIndent: " "
```

#### LISTING 4: quick-start-mod1.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for latexindent.pl.
\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\end{myenv}
```

#### Example 2 Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l quick-start2.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 6.



LISTING 5: quick-start2.yaml

```
indentRules:
  myenv: "  "
```

LISTING 6: quick-start-mod2.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for latexindent.pl.
\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\end{myenv}
```

**Example 3** Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l quick-start3.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 8.

LISTING 7: quick-start3.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv: 1
```

LISTING 8: quick-start-mod3.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for latexindent.pl.
\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\end{myenv}
```

**Example 4** Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l quick-start4.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 10.

LISTING 9: quick-start4.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 20
```

LISTING 10: quick-start-mod4.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for
latexindent.pl.
\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\end{myenv}
```

Full details of text wrapping in Section 6.1.

**Example 5** Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l quick-start5.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 12.



LISTING 11: quick-start5.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 20
  blocksFollow:
    other: '\\begin\\{myenv\\}'
```

-m

LISTING 12: quick-start-mod5.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for
latexindent.pl.
\\begin{myenv}
  The body of
  environments and
  other code blocks
  receive
  indentation.
\\end{myenv}
```

Full details of text wrapping in Section 6.1.

#### Example 6 Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l quick-start6.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 14.

LISTING 13: quick-start6.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

-m

LISTING 14: quick-start-mod6.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for
  latexindent.pl.\\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.
\\end{myenv}
```

This is an example of a *poly-switch*; full details of *poly-switches* are covered in Section 6.3.

#### Example 7 Running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l quick-start7.yaml quick-start.tex
```

gives Listing 16.

LISTING 15: quick-start7.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

-m

LISTING 16: quick-start-mod7.tex

```
A quick start
demonstration for latexindent.pl.
\\begin{myenv}
  The body of environments and
  other code blocks
  receive indentation.\\end{myenv}
```

Full details of *poly-switches* are covered in Section 6.3.

### 1.4 Required perl modules

If you receive an error message such as that given in Listing 17, then you need to install the missing perl modules.





## LISTING 17: Possible error messages

```
Can't locate File/HomeDir.pm in @INC (@INC contains:
/Library/Perl/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level/Library/Perl/5.12
/Network/Library/Perl/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level
/Network/Library/Perl/5.12
/Library/Perl/Updates/5.12.4/darwin-thread-multi-2level
/Library/Perl/Updates/5.12.4
/System/Library/Perl/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level/System/Library/Perl/5.12
/System/Library/Perl/Extras/5.12/darwin-thread-multi-2level
/System/Library/Perl/Extras/5.12.) at helloworld.pl line 10.
BEGIN failed--compilation aborted at helloworld.pl line 10.
```

latexindent.pl ships with a script to help with this process; if you run the following script, you should be prompted to install the appropriate modules.

```
cmh:~$ perl latexindent-module-installer.pl
```

You might also like to see <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/19590042/error-cant-locate-file-homedir-pm-in-inc>, for example, as well as appendix A on page 136.

## 1.5 About this documentation

As you read through this documentation, you will see many listings; in this version of the documentation, there are a total of 555. This may seem a lot, but I deem it necessary in presenting the various different options of latexindent.pl and the associated output that they are capable of producing.

The different listings are presented using different styles:

## LISTING 18: demo-tex.tex

demonstration .tex file

This type of listing is a .tex file.

LISTING 19:  
fileExtensionPreference

```
44 fileExtensionPreference:
45   .tex: 1
46   .sty: 2
47   .cls: 3
48   .bib: 4
```

This type of listing is a .yaml file; when you see line numbers given (as here) it means that the snippet is taken directly from defaultSettings.yaml, discussed in detail in Section 5 on page 24.

## LISTING 20: modifyLineBreaks

-m

```
495 modifyLineBreaks:
496   preserveBlankLines: 1
497   condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto: 1
```

This type of listing is a .yaml file, but it will only be relevant when the -m switch is active; see Section 6 on page 72 for more details.

## LISTING 21: replacements


-r

```
609 replacements:
610   -
611     amalgamate: 1
612   -
613     this: 'latexindent.pl'
614     that: 'pl.latexindent'
615     lookForThis: 0
616     when: before
```

This type of listing is a .yaml file, but it will only be relevant when the -r switch is active; see Section 7 on page 109 for more details.

You will occasionally see dates shown in the margin (for example, next to this paragraph!) which detail the date of the version in which the feature was implemented; the 'N' stands for 'new as of the date shown' and 'U' stands for 'updated as of the date shown'. If you see ✨, it means that the feature is either new (N) or updated (U) as of the release of the current version; if you see ✨ attached to



a listing, then it means that listing is new (N) or updated (U) as of the current version. If you have not read this document before (and even if you have!), then you can ignore every occurrence of the ; they are simply there to highlight new and updated features. The new and updated features in this documentation (V3.17.2) are on the following pages:

<i>batches of files demonstration (N)</i> .....	13
<i>overwriteIfDifferent switch (N)</i> .....	13
<i>GCString switch (N)</i> .....	19
<i>multipleSpacesToSingle for oneSentencePerLine (U)</i> .....	85
<i>oneSentencePerLine text wrapping update (U)</i> .....	92
<i>Unicode::GCString (N)</i> .....	138
<i>batches of files details (N)</i> .....	142

## 1.6 A word about regular expressions

As you read this documentation, you may encounter the term *regular expressions*. I've tried to write this documentation in such a way so as to allow you to engage with them or not, as you prefer. This documentation is not designed to be a guide to regular expressions, and if you'd like to read about them, I recommend [27].

## SECTION 2



# Demonstration: before and after

Let's give a demonstration of some before and after code – after all, you probably won't want to try the script if you don't much like the results. You might also like to watch the video demonstration I made on youtube [40]

As you look at Listings 22 to 27, remember that `latexindent.pl` is just following its rules, and there is nothing particular about these code snippets. All of the rules can be modified so that you can personalise your indentation scheme.

In each of the samples given in Listings 22 to 27 the 'before' case is a 'worst case scenario' with no effort to make indentation. The 'after' result would be the same, regardless of the leading white space at the beginning of each line which is stripped by `latexindent.pl` (unless a `verbatim`-like environment or `noIndentBlock` is specified – more on this in Section 5).

LISTING 22: `filecontents1.tex`

```
\begin{filecontents}{mybib.bib}
@online{strawberryperl,
title="Strawberry Perl",
url="http://strawberryperl.com/"}
@online{cmhblog,
title="A Perl script ..."
url="..."
}
\end{filecontents}
```

LISTING 24: `tikzset.tex`

```
\tikzset{
shrink inner sep/.code={
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
}
}
```

LISTING 26: `pstricks.tex`

```
\def\Picture#1{%
\def\stripH{#1}%
\begin{pspicture}[showgrid]
\psforeach{\row}{%
{{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
...
}}{%
\expandafter...
}
\end{pspicture}}
```

LISTING 23: `filecontents1.tex` default output

```
\begin{filecontents}{mybib.bib}
@online{strawberryperl,
title="Strawberry Perl",
url="http://strawberryperl.com/"}
@online{cmhblog,
title="A Perl script ..."
url="..."
}
\end{filecontents}
```

LISTING 25: `tikzset.tex` default output

```
\tikzset{
shrink inner sep/.code={
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
\pgfkeysgetvalue...
}
}
```

LISTING 27: `pstricks.tex` default output

```
\def\Picture#1{%
\def\stripH{#1}%
\begin{pspicture}[showgrid]
\psforeach{\row}{%
{{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
...
}}{%
\expandafter...
}
\end{pspicture}}
```

## SECTION 3



# How to use the script

`latexindent.pl` ships as part of the T<sub>E</sub>XLive distribution for Linux and Mac users; `latexindent.exe` ships as part of the T<sub>E</sub>XLive for Windows users. These files are also available from github [28] should you wish to use them without a T<sub>E</sub>X distribution; in this case, you may like to read appendix B on page 140 which details how the path variable can be updated.

In what follows, we will always refer to `latexindent.pl`, but depending on your operating system and preference, you might substitute `latexindent.exe` or simply `latexindent`.

There are two ways to use `latexindent.pl`: from the command line, and using `arara`; we discuss these in Section 3.1 and Section 3.2 respectively. We will discuss how to change the settings and behaviour of the script in Section 5 on page 24.

`latexindent.pl` ships with `latexindent.exe` for Windows users, so that you can use the script with or without a Perl distribution. If you plan to use `latexindent.pl` (i.e, the original Perl script) then you will need a few standard Perl modules – see appendix A on page 136 for details; in particular, note that a module installer helper script is shipped with `latexindent.pl`.

MiKTeX users on Windows may like to see [31] for details of how to use `latexindent.exe` without a Perl installation.

### 3.1 From the command line

`latexindent.pl` has a number of different switches/flags/options, which can be combined in any way that you like, either in short or long form as detailed below. `latexindent.pl` produces a `.log` file, `indent.log`, every time it is run; the name of the log file can be customised, but we will refer to the log file as `indent.log` throughout this document. There is a base of information that is written to `indent.log`, but other additional information will be written depending on which of the following options are used.

**-v, -version**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -v
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --version
```

This will output only the version number to the terminal.

**-vv, -vversion**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -vv
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --vversion
```

This will output *verbose* version details to the terminal, including the location of `latexindent.pl` and `defaultSettings.yaml`.

**-h, -help**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -h
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --help
```



As above this will output a welcome message to the terminal, including the version number and available options.

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
```

This will operate on `myfile.tex`, but will simply output to your terminal; `myfile.tex` will not be changed by `latexindent.pl` in any way using this command.

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to operate on multiple (batches) of files, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile1.tex myfile2.tex
```

Full details are given in appendix C on page 142.

**-w, -overwrite**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -w myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --overwrite myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex --overwrite
```

This will overwrite `myfile.tex`, but it will make a copy of `myfile.tex` first. You can control the name of the extension (default is `.bak`), and how many different backups are made – more on this in Section 5, and in particular see `backupExtension` and `onlyOneBackUp`.

Note that if `latexindent.pl` can not create the backup, then it will exit without touching your original file; an error message will be given asking you to check the permissions of the backup file.

**-wd, -overwriteIfDifferent**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -wd myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --overwriteIfDifferent myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex --overwriteIfDifferent
```

This will overwrite `myfile.tex` but only if the indented text is different from the original. If the indented text is not different from the original, then `myfile.tex` will not be overwritten.

All other details from the `-w` switch are relevant here. If you call `latexindent.pl` with both the `-wd` and the `-w` switch, then the `-w` switch will be deactivated and the `-wd` switch takes priority.

**-o=output.tex, -outputfile=output.tex**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o=output.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --outputfile=output.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --outputfile output.tex myfile.tex
```

This will indent `myfile.tex` and output it to `output.tex`, overwriting it (`output.tex`) if it already exists<sup>1</sup>.

Note that if `latexindent.pl` is called with both the `-w` and `-o` switches, then `-w` will be ignored and `-o` will take priority (this seems safer than the other way round). The same is true for the `-wd` switch, and the `-o` switch takes priority over it.

Note that using `-o` as above is equivalent to using

<sup>1</sup>Users of version 2.\* should note the subtle change in syntax



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex > output.tex
```

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the `-o` switch with the name of the output file *without* an extension; in this case, `latexindent.pl` will use the extension from the original file. For example, the following two calls to `latexindent.pl` are equivalent:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output.tex
```

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the `-o` switch using a `+` symbol at the beginning; this will concatenate the name of the input file and the text given to the `-o` switch. For example, the following two calls to `latexindent.pl` are equivalent:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o+=new
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=myfilenew.tex
```

N: 2017-06-25

You can call the `-o` switch using a `++` symbol at the end of the name of your output file; this tells `latexindent.pl` to search successively for the name of your output file concatenated with `0`, `1`, ... while the name of the output file exists. For example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=output++
```

tells `latexindent.pl` to output to `output0.tex`, but if it exists then output to `output1.tex`, and so on.

Calling `latexindent.pl` with simply

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=++
```

tells it to output to `myfile0.tex`, but if it exists then output to `myfile1.tex` and so on.

The `+` and `++` feature of the `-o` switch can be combined; for example, calling

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o+=out++
```

tells `latexindent.pl` to output to `myfileout0.tex`, but if it exists, then try `myfileout1.tex`, and so on.

There is no need to specify a file extension when using the `++` feature, but if you wish to, then you should include it *after* the `++` symbols, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o+=out++.tex
```

See appendix J on page 152 for details of how the interface has changed from Version 2.2 to Version 3.0 for this flag.

`-s`, `-silent`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -s
```

Silent mode: no output will be given to the terminal.



`-t, -trace`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -t myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -t
```

Tracing mode: verbose output will be given to `indent.log`. This is useful if `latexindent.pl` has made a mistake and you're trying to find out where and why. You might also be interested in learning about `latexindent.pl`'s thought process – if so, this switch is for you, although it should be noted that, especially for large files, this does affect performance of the script.

`-tt, -ttrace`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -tt myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -tt
```

*More detailed tracing mode:* this option gives more details to `indent.log` than the standard trace option (note that, even more so than with `-t`, especially for large files, performance of the script will be affected).

`-l, -local[=myyaml.yaml,other.yaml,...]`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l first.yaml,second.yaml,third.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=first.yaml,second.yaml,third.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -l=first.yaml,second.yaml,third.yaml
```

`latexindent.pl` will always load `defaultSettings.yaml` (rhymes with camel) and if it is called with the `-l` switch and it finds `localSettings.yaml` in the same directory as `myfile.tex`, then, if not found, it looks for `localSettings.yaml` (and friends, see Section 4.2 on page 21) in the current working directory, then these settings will be added to the indentation scheme. Information will be given in `indent.log` on the success or failure of loading `localSettings.yaml`.

The `-l` flag can take an *optional* parameter which details the name (or names separated by commas) of a YAML file(s) that resides in the same directory as `myfile.tex`; you can use this option if you would like to load a settings file in the current working directory that is *not* called `localSettings.yaml`. In fact, you can specify both *relative* and *absolute paths* for your YAML files; for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=../myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=/home/cmhughes/Desktop/myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=C:\Users\cmhughes\Desktop\myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
```

You will find a lot of other explicit demonstrations of how to use the `-l` switch throughout this documentation,

You can call the `-l` switch with a '+' symbol either before or after another YAML file; for example:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l+=myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l "+_myyaml.yaml" myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myyaml.yaml+ myfile.tex
```

which translate, respectively, to

U: 2021-03-14

U: 2017-08-21

N: 2017-06-25



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=localSettings.yaml,myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=localSettings.yaml,myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myyaml.yaml,localSettings.yaml myfile.tex
```

Note that the following is *not* allowed:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l+myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
```

and

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l + myyaml.yaml myfile.tex
```

will *only* load `localSettings.yaml`, and `myyaml.yaml` will be ignored. If you wish to use spaces between any of the YAML settings, then you must wrap the entire list of YAML files in quotes, as demonstrated above.

You may also choose to omit the `yaml` extension, such as

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=localSettings,myyaml myfile.tex
```

`-y`, `-yaml=yaml settings`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -y="defaultIndent:_'"
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -y="defaultIndent:_',maximumIndentation:'_"
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -y="indentRules:_one:_'\t\t\t\t'"
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
-y='modifyLineBreaks:environments:EndStartsOnOwnLine:3' -m
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
-y='modifyLineBreaks:environments:one:EndStartsOnOwnLine:3' -m
```

You can specify YAML settings from the command line using the `-y` or `-yaml` switch; sample demonstrations are given above. Note, in particular, that multiple settings can be specified by separating them via commas. There is a further option to use a `;` to separate fields, which is demonstrated in Section 4.3 on page 22.

Any settings specified via this switch will be loaded *after* any specified using the `-l` switch. This is discussed further in Section 4.4 on page 23.

`-d`, `-onlydefault`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -d myfile.tex
```

Only `defaultSettings.yaml`: you might like to read Section 5 before using this switch. By default, `latexindent.pl` will always search for `indentconfig.yaml` or `.indentconfig.yaml` in your home directory. If you would prefer it not to do so then (instead of deleting or renaming `indentconfig.yaml` or `.indentconfig.yaml`) you can simply call the script with the `-d` switch; note that this will also tell the script to ignore `localSettings.yaml` even if it has been called with the `-l` switch; `latexindent.pl` will also ignore any settings specified from the `-y` switch.

`-c`, `-cruft=<directory>`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -c=/path/to/directory/ myfile.tex
```





If you wish to have backup files and `indent.log` written to a directory other than the current working directory, then you can send these ‘cruft’ files to another directory. Note the use of a trailing forward slash.

`-g, -logfile=<name of log file>`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -g=other.log myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -g other.log myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --logfile other.log myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -g other.log
```

By default, `latexindent.pl` reports information to `indent.log`, but if you wish to change the name of this file, simply call the script with your chosen name after the `-g` switch as demonstrated above.

If `latexindent.pl` can not open the log file that you specify, then the script will operate, and no log file will be produced; this might be helpful to users who wish to specify the following, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -g /dev/null myfile.tex
```

`-sl, -screenlog`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -sl myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -screenlog myfile.tex
```

Using this option tells `latexindent.pl` to output the log file to the screen, as well as to your chosen log file.

`-m, -modifylinebreaks`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -modifylinebreaks myfile.tex
```

One of the most exciting developments in Version 3.0 is the ability to modify line breaks; for full details see Section 6 on page 72

`latexindent.pl` can also be called on a file without the file extension, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile
```

and in which case, you can specify the order in which extensions are searched for; see Listing 32 on page 24 for full details.

STDIN

```
cmh:~$ cat myfile.tex | latexindent.pl
cmh:~$ cat myfile.tex | latexindent.pl -
```

`latexindent.pl` will allow input from STDIN, which means that you can pipe output from other commands directly into the script. For example assuming that you have content in `myfile.tex`, then the above command will output the results of operating upon `myfile.tex`.

If you wish to use this feature with your own local settings, via the `-l` switch, then you should finish your call to `latexindent.pl` with a `-` sign:

```
cmh:~$ cat myfile.tex | latexindent.pl -l=mysettings.yaml -
```



U: 2018-01-13

Similarly, if you simply type `latexindent.pl` at the command line, then it will expect (STDIN) input from the command line.

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl
```

Once you have finished typing your input, you can press

- CTRL+D on Linux
- CTRL+Z followed by ENTER on Windows

to signify that your input has finished. Thanks to [9] for an update to this feature.

**-r, -replacement**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -replacement myfile.tex
```

N: 2019-07-13

You can call `latexindent.pl` with the `-r` switch to instruct it to perform replacements/substitutions on your file; full details and examples are given in Section 7 on page 109.

**-rv, -replacementrespectverb**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rv myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -replacementrespectverb myfile.tex
```

N: 2019-07-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to perform replacements/substitutions by using the `-rv` switch, but will *respect verbatim code blocks*; full details and examples are given in Section 7 on page 109.

**-rr, -onlyreplacement**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rr myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -onlyreplacement myfile.tex
```

N: 2019-07-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to skip all of its other indentation operations and *only* perform replacements/substitutions by using the `-rr` switch; full details and examples are given in Section 7 on page 109.

**-k, -check**

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -k myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -check myfile.tex
```

N: 2021-09-16

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to check if the text after indentation matches that given in the original file.

The exit code of `latexindent.pl` is 0 by default. If you use the `-k` switch then

- if the text after indentation matches that given in the original file, then the exit code is 0;
- if the text after indentation does *not* match that given in the original file, then the exit code is 1.

The value of the exit code may be important to those wishing to, for example, check the status of the indentation in continuous integration tools such as GitHub Actions. Full details of the exit codes of `latexindent.pl` are given in Table 1.

A simple diff will be given in `indent.log`.

**-kv, -checkv**



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -kv myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -checkv myfile.tex
```

N: 2021-09-16

The `check verbose` switch is exactly the same as the `-k` switch, except that it is *verbose*, and it will output the (simple) diff to the terminal, as well as to `indent.log`.

`-n, -lines=MIN-MAX`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -n 5-8 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -lines 5-8 myfile.tex
```

N: 2021-09-16

The `lines` switch instructs `latexindent.pl` to operate only on specific line ranges within `myfile.tex`.

Complete demonstrations are given in Section 8.

`-GCString`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --GCString myfile.tex
```

N: 2022-03-25

instructs `latexindent.pl` to load the `Unicode::GCString` module. This should only be necessary if you find that the alignment at ampersand routine (described in Section 5.5) does not work for your language. Further details are given in appendix A.3.

### 3.2 From arara

Using `latexindent.pl` from the command line is fine for some folks, but others may find it easier to use from `arara`; you can find the `arara` rule for `latexindent.pl` and its associated documentation at [1].

### 3.3 Summary of exit codes

Assuming that you call `latexindent.pl` on `myfile.tex`

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex
```

then `latexindent.pl` can exit with the exit codes given in Table 1.

TABLE 1: Exit codes for `latexindent.pl`

exit code	indentation	status
0	✓	success; if <code>-k</code> or <code>-kv</code> active, indented text matches original
0	✗	success; if <code>-version</code> , <code>-vversion</code> or <code>-help</code> , no indentation performed
1	✓	success, and <code>-k</code> or <code>-kv</code> active; indented text <i>different</i> from original
2	✗	failure, <code>defaultSettings.yaml</code> could not be read
3	✗	failure, <code>myfile.tex</code> not found
4	✗	failure, <code>myfile.tex</code> exists but cannot be read
5	✗	failure, <code>-w</code> active, and back-up file cannot be written
6	✗	failure, <code>-c</code> active, and <code>cruft</code> directory does not exist

## SECTION 4



# indentconfig.yaml, local settings and the -y switch

The behaviour of `latexindent.pl` is controlled from the settings specified in any of the YAML files that you tell it to load. By default, `latexindent.pl` will only load `defaultSettings.yaml`, but there are a few ways that you can tell it to load your own settings files.

### 4.1 indentconfig.yaml and .indentconfig.yaml

`latexindent.pl` will always check your home directory for `indentconfig.yaml` and `.indentconfig.yaml` (unless it is called with the `-d` switch), which is a plain text file you can create that contains the *absolute* paths for any settings files that you wish `latexindent.pl` to load. There is no difference between `indentconfig.yaml` and `.indentconfig.yaml`, other than the fact that `.indentconfig.yaml` is a 'hidden' file; thank you to [5] for providing this feature. In what follows, we will use `indentconfig.yaml`, but it is understood that this could equally represent `.indentconfig.yaml`. If you have both files in existence then `indentconfig.yaml` takes priority.

For Mac and Linux users, their home directory is `/username` while Windows (Vista onwards) is `C:\Users\username`<sup>2</sup> Listing 28 shows a sample `indentconfig.yaml` file.

LISTING 28: `indentconfig.yaml` (sample)

```
# Paths to user settings for latexindent.pl
#
# Note that the settings will be read in the order you
# specify here- each successive settings file will overwrite
# the variables that you specify

paths:
- /home/cmhughes/Documents/yamlfiles/mysettings.yaml
- /home/cmhughes/folder/othersettings.yaml
- /some/other/folder/anynameyouwant.yaml
- C:\Users\chughes\Documents\mysettings.yaml
- C:\Users\chughes\Desktop\test spaces\more spaces.yaml
```

Note that the `.yaml` files you specify in `indentconfig.yaml` will be loaded in the order in which you write them. Each file doesn't have to have every switch from `defaultSettings.yaml`; in fact, I recommend that you only keep the switches that you want to *change* in these settings files.

To get started with your own settings file, you might like to save a copy of `defaultSettings.yaml` in another directory and call it, for example, `mysettings.yaml`. Once you have added the path to `indentconfig.yaml` you can change the switches and add more code-block names to it as you see fit – have a look at Listing 29 for an example that uses four tabs for the default indent, adds the `tabbing` environment/command to the list of environments that contains alignment delimiters; you might also like to refer to the many YAML files detailed throughout the rest of this documentation.

<sup>2</sup>If you're not sure where to put `indentconfig.yaml`, don't worry `latexindent.pl` will tell you in the log file exactly where to put it assuming it doesn't exist already.



LISTING 29: mysettings.yaml (example)

```
# Default value of indentation
defaultIndent: "\t\t\t\t\t"

# environments that have tab delimiters, add more
# as needed
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing: 1
```

You can make sure that your settings are loaded by checking `indent.log` for details – if you have specified a path that `latexindent.pl` doesn't recognise then you'll get a warning, otherwise you'll get confirmation that `latexindent.pl` has read your settings file <sup>3</sup>.

**Warning!**

When editing `.yaml` files it is *extremely* important to remember how sensitive they are to spaces. I highly recommend copying and pasting from `defaultSettings.yaml` when you create your first whatevernameyoulike.yaml file.

If `latexindent.pl` can not read your `.yaml` file it will tell you so in `indent.log`.

N: 2021-06-19

If you find that `latexindent.pl` does not read your YAML file, then it might be as a result of the default commandline encoding not being UTF-8; normally this will only occur for Windows users. In this case, you might like to explore the encoding option for `indentconfig.yaml` as demonstrated in Listing 30.

LISTING 30: The encoding option for indentconfig.yaml

```
encoding: GB2312
paths:
- D:\cmh\latexindent.yaml
```

Thank you to [15] for this contribution; please see appendix H on page 150 and details within [34] for further information.

## 4.2 localSettings.yaml and friends

The `-l` switch tells `latexindent.pl` to look for `localSettings.yaml` and/or friends in the *same directory* as `myfile.tex`. For example, if you use the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l myfile.tex
```

then `latexindent.pl` will search for and then, assuming they exist, load each of the following files in the following order:

1. `localSettings.yaml`
2. `latexindent.yaml`
3. `.localSettings.yaml`
4. `.latexindent.yaml`

These files will be assumed to be in the same directory as `myfile.tex`, or otherwise in the current working directory. You do not need to have all of the above files, usually just one will be sufficient. In what follows, whenever we refer to `localSettings.yaml` it is assumed that it can mean any of the four named options listed above.

<sup>3</sup>Windows users may find that they have to end `.yaml` files with a blank line

U: 2021-03-14



If you'd prefer to name your `localSettings.yaml` file something different, (say, `mysettings.yaml` as in Listing 29) then you can call `latexindent.pl` using, for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=mysettings.yaml myfile.tex
```

Any settings file(s) specified using the `-l` switch will be read *after* `defaultSettings.yaml` and, assuming they exist, any user setting files specified in `indentconfig.yaml`.

Your settings file can contain any switches that you'd like to change; a sample is shown in Listing 31, and you'll find plenty of further examples throughout this manual.

#### LISTING 31: `localSettings.yaml` (example)

```
# verbatim environments - environments specified
# here will not be changed at all!
verbatimEnvironments:
  cmhenvironment: 0
  myenv: 1
```

You can make sure that your settings file has been loaded by checking `indent.log` for details; if it can not be read then you receive a warning, otherwise you'll get confirmation that `latexindent.pl` has read your settings file.

### 4.3 The -y|yaml switch

N: 2017-08-21

You may use the `-y` switch to load your settings; for example, if you wished to specify the settings from Listing 31 using the `-y` switch, then you could use the following command:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -y="verbatimEnvironments:cmhenvironment:0;myenv:1" myfile.tex
```

Note the use of `;` to specify another field within `verbatimEnvironments`. This is shorthand, and equivalent, to using the following command:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl
-y="verbatimEnvironments:cmhenvironment:0,verbatimEnvironments:myenv:1"
myfile.tex
```

You may, of course, specify settings using the `-y` switch as well as, for example, settings loaded using the `-l` switch; for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=mysettings.yaml
-y="verbatimEnvironments:cmhenvironment:0;myenv:1" myfile.tex
```

Any settings specified using the `-y` switch will be loaded *after* any specified using `indentconfig.yaml` and the `-l` switch.

If you wish to specify any regex-based settings using the `-y` switch, it is important not to use quotes surrounding the regex; for example, with reference to the 'one sentence per line' feature (Section 6.2 on page 84) and the listings within Listing 334 on page 86, the following settings give the option to have sentences end with a semicolon

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m
--yaml='modifyLineBreaks:oneSentencePerLine:sentencesEndWith:other:;','
```



#### 4.4 Settings load order

`latexindent.pl` loads the settings files in the following order:

1. `defaultSettings.yaml` is always loaded, and can not be renamed;
2. `anyUserSettings.yaml` and any other arbitrarily-named files specified in `indentconfig.yaml`;
3. `localSettings.yaml` but only if found in the same directory as `myfile.tex` and called with `-l` switch; this file can be renamed, provided that the call to `latexindent.pl` is adjusted accordingly (see Section 4.2). You may specify both relative and absolute paths to other YAML files using the `-l` switch, separating multiple files using commas;
4. any settings specified in the `-y` switch.

A visual representation of this is given in Figure 1.

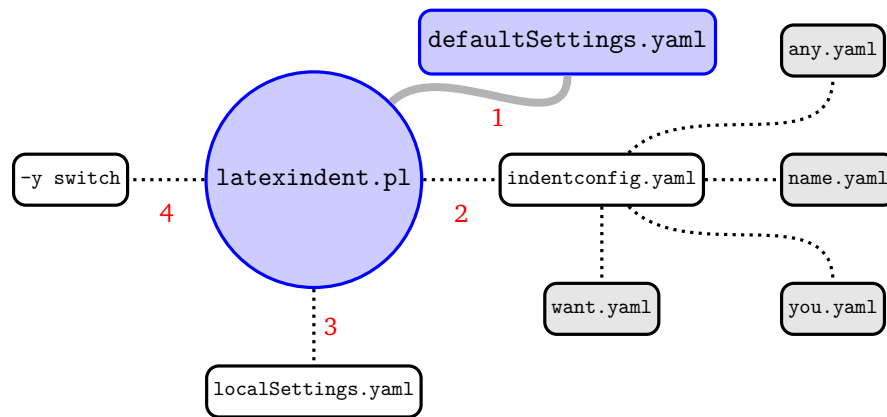


FIGURE 1: Schematic of the load order described in Section 4.4; solid lines represent mandatory files, dotted lines represent optional files. `indentconfig.yaml` can contain as many files as you like. The files will be loaded in order; if you specify settings for the same field in more than one file, the most recent takes priority.

## SECTION 5



# defaultSettings.yaml

`latexindent.pl` loads its settings from `defaultSettings.yaml`. The idea is to separate the behaviour of the script from the internal working – this is very similar to the way that we separate content from form when writing our documents in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .

If you look in `defaultSettings.yaml` you'll find the switches that govern the behaviour of `latexindent.pl`. If you're not sure where `defaultSettings.yaml` resides on your computer, don't worry as `indent.log` will tell you where to find it. `defaultSettings.yaml` is commented, but here is a description of what each switch is designed to do. The default value is given in each case; whenever you see *integer* in *this* section, assume that it must be greater than or equal to 0 unless otherwise stated.

For most of the settings in `defaultSettings.yaml` that are specified as integers, then we understand 0 to represent 'off' and 1 to represent 'on'. For fields that allow values other than 0 or 1, it is hoped that the specific context and associated commentary should make it clear which values are allowed.

`fileExtensionPreference:`  $\langle fields \rangle$

`latexindent.pl` can be called to act on a file without specifying the file extension. For example we can call

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile
```

in which case the script will look for `myfile` with the extensions specified in `fileExtensionPreference` in their numeric order. If no match is found, the script will exit. As with all of the fields, you should change and/or add to this as necessary.

LISTING 32: `fileExtensionPreference`

```
44 fileExtensionPreference:
45   .tex: 1
46   .sty: 2
47   .cls: 3
48   .bib: 4
```

Calling `latexindent.pl myfile` with the (default) settings specified in Listing 32 means that the script will first look for `myfile.tex`, then `myfile.sty`, `myfile.cls`, and finally `myfile.bib` in order<sup>4</sup>.

### 5.1 Backup and log file preferences

`backupExtension:`  $\langle extension\ name \rangle$

If you call `latexindent.pl` with the `-w` switch (to overwrite `myfile.tex`) then it will create a backup file before doing any indentation; the default extension is `.bak`, so, for example, `myfile.bak0` would be created when calling `latexindent.pl myfile.tex` for the first time.

By default, every time you subsequently call `latexindent.pl` with the `-w` to act upon `myfile.tex`, it will create successive back up files: `myfile.bak1`, `myfile.bak2`, etc.

<sup>4</sup>Throughout this manual, listings shown with line numbers represent code taken directly from `defaultSettings.yaml`.





`onlyOneBackUp`: *<integer>*

If you don't want a backup for every time that you call `latexindent.pl` (so you don't want `myfile.bak1`, `myfile.bak2`, etc) and you simply want `myfile.bak` (or whatever you chose `backupExtension` to be) then change `onlyOneBackUp` to 1; the default value of `onlyOneBackUp` is 0.

`maxNumberOfBackUps`: *<integer>*

Some users may only want a finite number of backup files, say at most 3, in which case, they can change this switch. The smallest value of `maxNumberOfBackUps` is 0 which will *not* prevent backup files being made; in this case, the behaviour will be dictated entirely by `onlyOneBackUp`. The default value of `maxNumberOfBackUps` is 0.

`cycleThroughBackUps`: *<integer>*

Some users may wish to cycle through backup files, by deleting the oldest backup file and keeping only the most recent; for example, with `maxNumberOfBackUps`: 4, and `cycleThroughBackUps` set to 1 then the copy procedure given below would be obeyed.

```
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak1 to myfile.bak0
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak2 to myfile.bak1
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak3 to myfile.bak2
cmh:~$ copy myfile.bak4 to myfile.bak3
```

The default value of `cycleThroughBackUps` is 0.

`logFilePreferences`: *<fields>*

`latexindent.pl` writes information to `indent.log`, some of which can be customized by changing `logFilePreferences`; see Listing 33. If you load your own user settings (see Section 4 on page 20) then `latexindent.pl` will detail them in `indent.log`; you can choose not to have the details logged by switching `showEveryYamlRead` to 0. Once all of your settings have been loaded, you can see the amalgamated settings in the log file by switching `showAmalgamatedSettings` to 1, if you wish.

LISTING 33: `logFilePreferences`

```
88 logFilePreferences:
89   showEveryYamlRead: 1
90   showAmalgamatedSettings: 0
91   showDecorationStartCodeBlockTrace: 0
92   showDecorationFinishCodeBlockTrace: 0
93   endLogFileWith: '-----'
94   showGitHubInfoFooter: 1
95   Dumper:
96     Terse: 1
97     Indent: 1
98     Useqq: 1
99     Deparse: 1
100    Quotekeys: 0
101    Sortkeys: 1
102    Pair: " => "
```

When either of the trace modes (see page 15) are active, you will receive detailed information in `indent.log`. You can specify character strings to appear before and after the notification of a found code block using, respectively, `showDecorationStartCodeBlockTrace` and `showDecorationFinishCodeBlockTrace`. A demonstration is given in appendix G on page 149.



The log file will end with the characters given in `endLogFileWith`, and will report the GitHub address of `latexindent.pl` to the log file if `showGitHubInfoFooter` is set to 1.

U: 2021-03-14

Note: `latexindent.pl` no longer uses the `log4perl` module to handle the creation of the logfile.

U: 2021-06-19

Some of the options for Perl's Dumper module can be specified in Listing 33; see [26] and [25] for more information. These options will mostly be helpful for those calling `latexindent.pl` with the `-tt` option described in Section 3.1.

## 5.2 Verbatim code blocks

`verbatimEnvironments`: *(fields)*

A field that contains a list of environments that you would like left completely alone – no indentation will be performed on environments that you have specified in this field, see Listing 34.

LISTING 34: `verbatimEnvironments`

```
106 verbatimEnvironments:
107     verbatim: 1
108     lstlisting: 1
109     minted: 1
```

LISTING 35: `verbatimCommands`

```
112 verbatimCommands:
113     verb: 1
114     lstinline: 1
```

Note that if you put an environment in `verbatimEnvironments` and in other fields such as `lookForAlignDelims` or `noAdditionalIndent` then `latexindent.pl` will *always* prioritize `verbatimEnvironments`.

N: 2021-10-30

You can, optionally, specify the `verbatim` field using the `name` field which takes a regular expression as its argument; thank you to [18] for contributing this feature.

For demonstration, then assuming that your file contains the environments `latexcode`, `latexcode*`, `pythoncode` and `pythoncode*`, then the listings given in Listings 36 and 37 are equivalent.

LISTING 36: `nameAsRegex1.yaml`

```
verbatimEnvironments:
    latexcode: 1
    latexcode*: 1
    pythoncode: 1
    pythoncode*: 1
```

LISTING 37: `nameAsRegex2.yaml`

```
verbatimEnvironments:
    nameAsRegex:
        name: '\w+code\*?'
        lookForThis: 1
```

With reference to Listing 37:

- the `name` field as specified here means *any word followed by the word code, optionally followed by \**;
- we have used `nameAsRegex` to identify this field, but you can use any description you like;
- the `lookForThis` field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

`verbatimCommands`: *(fields)*

A field that contains a list of commands that are verbatim commands, for example `\lstinline`; any commands populated in this field are protected from line breaking routines (only relevant if the `-m` is active, see Section 6 on page 72).

With reference to Listing 35, by default `latexindent.pl` looks for `\verb` immediately followed by another character, and then it takes the body as anything up to the next occurrence of the character; this means that, for example, `\verb!x+3!` is treated as a `verbatimCommands`.

N: 2021-10-30

You can, optionally, specify the `verbatimCommands` field using the `name` field which takes a regular expression as its argument; thank you to [18] for contributing this feature.

For demonstration, then assuming that your file contains the commands `verbinline`, `myinline` then the listings given in Listings 38 and 39 are equivalent.



LISTING 38: nameAsRegex3.yaml

```
verbatimCommands:
  verbinline: 1
  myinline: 1
```

LISTING 39: nameAsRegex4.yaml

```
verbatimCommands:
  nameAsRegex:
    name: '\w+inline'
    lookForThis: 1
```

With reference to Listing 39:

- the name field as specified here means *any word followed by the word inline*;
- we have used nameAsRegex to identify this field, but you can use any description you like;
- the lookForThis field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

`noIndentBlock: {fields}`

If you have a block of code that you don't want `latexindent.pl` to touch (even if it is *not* a verbatim-like environment) then you can wrap it in an environment from `noIndentBlock`; you can use any name you like for this, provided you populate it as demonstrate in Listing 40.

LISTING 40: noIndentBlock

```
119 noIndentBlock:
120   noindent: 1
121   cmhtest: 1
```

Of course, you don't want to have to specify these as null environments in your code, so you use them with a comment symbol, `%`, followed by as many spaces (possibly none) as you like; see Listing 41 for example.

LISTING 41: noIndentBlock.tex

```
% \begin{noindent}
some before text
    this code
        won't
    be touched
        by
        latexindent.pl!
some after text
% \end{noindent}
```

Important note: it is assumed that the `noindent` block statements specified in this way appear on their own line.

The `noIndentBlock` fields can also be specified in terms of `begin` and `end` fields. We use the code in Listing 42 to demonstrate this feature.

LISTING 42: noIndentBlock1.tex

```
some before text
    this code
        won't
    be touched
        by
        latexindent.pl!
some after text
```

The settings given in Listings 43 and 44 are equivalent:



LISTING 43: noindent1.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  demo:
    begin: 'some\hbefore'
    body: '.*?'
    end: 'some\hafter\htext'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 44: noindent2.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  demo:
    begin: 'some\hbefore'
    end: 'some\hafter\htext'
```

LISTING 45: noindent3.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  demo:
    begin: 'some\hbefore'
    body: '.*?'
    end: 'some\hafter\htext'
    lookForThis: 0
```

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l noindent1.yaml noindent1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l noindent2.yaml noindent1
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 46.

LISTING 46: noIndentBlock1.tex using Listing 43 or Listing 44

```
some before text
      this code
            won't
      be touched
                by
            latexindent.pl!
some after text
```

The begin, body and end fields for noIndentBlock are all *regular expressions*. If the body field is not specified, then it takes a default value of `.*?` which is written explicitly in Listing 43. In this context, we interpret `.*?` in words as *the fewest number of characters (possibly none) until the 'end' field is reached*.

The lookForThis field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

Using Listing 45 demonstrates setting lookForThis to 0 (off); running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l noindent3.yaml noindent1
```

gives the output in Listing 47.

LISTING 47: noIndentBlock1.tex using Listing 45

```
some before text
this code
won't
be touched
by
latexindent.pl!
some after text
```

We will demonstrate this feature later in the documentation in Listing 526.

You can, optionally, specify the noIndentBlock field using the name field which takes a regular expression as its argument; thank you to [18] for contributing this feature.

For demonstration, then assuming that your file contains the environments `testnoindent`, `testnoindent*` then the listings given in Listings 48 and 49 are equivalent.



LISTING 48: nameAsRegex5.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  mytest:
    begin: '\\begin\\{testnoindent\\*?\\}'
    end: '\\end\\{testnoindent\\*?\\}'
```

LISTING 49: nameAsRegex6.yaml

```
noIndentBlock:
  nameAsRegex:
    name: '\\w+noindent\\*?'
    lookForThis: 1
```

With reference to Listing 49:

- the name field as specified here means *any word followed by the word noindent, optionally followed by \**;
- we have used nameAsRegex to identify this field, but you can use any description you like;
- the lookForThis field is optional, and can take the values 0 (off) or 1 (on); by default, it is assumed to be 1 (on).

### 5.3 filecontents and preamble

```
fileContentsEnvironments: <field>
```

Before `latexindent.pl` determines the difference between preamble (if any) and the main document, it first searches for any of the environments specified in `fileContentsEnvironments`, see Listing 50. The behaviour of `latexindent.pl` on these environments is determined by their location (preamble or not), and the value `indentPreamble`, discussed next.

LISTING 50: fileContentsEnvironments

```
125 fileContentsEnvironments:
126     filecontents: 1
127     filecontents*: 1
```

```
indentPreamble: 0|1
```

The preamble of a document can sometimes contain some trickier code for `latexindent.pl` to operate upon. By default, `latexindent.pl` won't try to operate on the preamble (as `indentPreamble` is set to 0, by default), but if you'd like `latexindent.pl` to try then change `indentPreamble` to 1.

```
lookForPreamble: <fields>
```

Not all files contain preamble; for example, `sty`, `cls` and `bib` files typically do *not*. Referencing Listing 51, if you set, for example, `.tex` to 0, then regardless of the setting of the value of `indentPreamble`, preamble will not be assumed when operating upon `.tex` files.

LISTING 51: lookForPreamble

```
133 lookForPreamble:
134     .tex: 1
135     .sty: 0
136     .cls: 0
137     .bib: 0
```

```
preambleCommandsBeforeEnvironments: 0|1
```

Assuming that `latexindent.pl` is asked to operate upon the preamble of a document, when this switch is set to 0 then environment code blocks will be sought first, and then command code blocks. When this switch is set to 1, commands will be sought first. The example that first motivated this switch contained the code given in Listing 52.



#### LISTING 52: Motivating `preambleCommandsBeforeEnvironments`

```
...
preheadhook={\begin{mdframed}[style=myframedstyle]},
postfoothook=\end{mdframed},
...
```

### 5.4 Indentation and horizontal space

`defaultIndent`: *<horizontal space>*

This is the default indentation used in the absence of other details for the code block with which we are working. The default value is `\t` which means a tab; we will explore customisation beyond `defaultIndent` in Section 5.8 on page 50.

If you're interested in experimenting with `latexindent.pl` then you can *remove* all indentation by setting `defaultIndent`: `""`.

`removeTrailingWhitespace`: *<fields>*

Trailing white space can be removed both *before* and *after* processing the document, as detailed in Listing 53; each of the fields can take the values 0 or 1. See Listings 417 to 419 on pages 98–99 for before and after results. Thanks to [3] for providing this feature.

#### LISTING 53: `removeTrailingWhitespace`

```
150 removeTrailingWhitespace:
151     beforeProcessing: 0
152     afterProcessing: 1
```

#### LISTING 54: `removeTrailingWhitespace` (alt)

```
removeTrailingWhitespace: 1
```

N: 2017-06-28

You can specify `removeTrailingWhitespace` simply as 0 or 1, if you wish; in this case, `latexindent.pl` will set both `beforeProcessing` and `afterProcessing` to the value you specify; see Listing 54.

### 5.5 Aligning at delimiters

`lookForAlignDelims`: *<fields>*

This contains a list of code blocks that are operated upon in a special way by `latexindent.pl` (see Listing 55). In fact, the fields in `lookForAlignDelims` can actually take two different forms: the *basic* version is shown in Listing 55 and the *advanced* version in Listing 58; we will discuss each in turn.

#### LISTING 55: `lookForAlignDelims` (basic)

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular: 1
  tabularx: 1
  longtable: 1
  array: 1
  matrix: 1
  ...
```

Specifying code blocks in this field instructs `latexindent.pl` to try and align each column by its alignment delimiters. It does have some limitations (discussed further in Section 10), but in many cases it will produce results such as those in Listings 56 and 57.



If you find that `latexindent.pl` does not perform satisfactorily on such environments then you can set the relevant key to 0, for example `tabular: 0`; alternatively, if you just want to ignore *specific* instances of the environment, you could wrap them in something from `noIndentBlock` (see Listing 40 on page 27).

LISTING 56: `tabular1.tex`

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
1& 2 & & 3 & & 4\\
5& & 6 & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 57: `tabular1.tex` default output

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
1 & 2 & & 3 & & 4 \\
5 & & 6 & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

If, for example, you wish to remove the alignment of the `\\` within a delimiter-aligned block, then the advanced form of `lookForAlignDelims` shown in Listing 58 is for you.

LISTING 58: `lookForAlignDelims` (advanced)

```
155 lookForAlignDelims:
156   tabular:
157     delims: 1
158     alignDoubleBackSlash: 1
159     spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash: 1
160     multiColumnGrouping: 0
161     alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims: 1
162     spacesBeforeAmpersand: 1
163     spacesAfterAmpersand: 1
164     justification: left
165     alignFinalDoubleBackSlash: 0
166     dontMeasure: 0
167     delimiterRegex: '(?!\\)(\\&)'
168     delimiterJustification: left
169     lookForChildCodeBlocks: 1
170   tabularx:
171     delims: 1
```

Note that you can use a mixture of the basic and advanced form: in Listing 58 `tabular` and `tabularx` are advanced and `longtable` is basic. When using the advanced form, each field should receive at least 1 sub-field, and *can* (but does not have to) receive any of the following fields:

- `delims`: binary switch (0 or 1) equivalent to simply specifying, for example, `tabular: 1` in the basic version shown in Listing 55. If `delims` is set to 0 then the align at ampersand routine will not be called for this code block (default: 1);
- `alignDoubleBackSlash`: binary switch (0 or 1) to determine if `\\` should be aligned (default: 1);
- `spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash`: optionally, specifies the number (integer  $\geq 0$ ) of spaces to be inserted before `\\` (default: 1);
- `multiColumnGrouping`: binary switch (0 or 1) that details if `latexindent.pl` should group columns above and below a `\multicolumn` command (default: 0);
- `alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims`: binary switch (0 or 1) that details if rows that do not contain the maximum number of delimiters should be formatted so as to have the ampersands aligned (default: 1);
- `spacesBeforeAmpersand`: optionally specifies the number (integer  $\geq 0$ ) of spaces to be placed *before* ampersands (default: 1);
- `spacesAfterAmpersand`: optionally specifies the number (integer  $\geq 0$ ) of spaces to be placed *after* ampersands (default: 1);
- `justification`: optionally specifies the justification of each cell as either *left* or *right* (default: left);

U: 2018-01-13

N: 2017-06-19

N: 2017-06-19

N: 2018-01-13

N: 2018-01-13

N: 2018-01-13



N: 2020-03-21

N: 2020-03-21

N: 2020-03-21

N: 2020-03-21

N: 2021-12-13

- `alignFinalDoubleBackSlash` optionally specifies if the *final* double back slash should be used for alignment (default: 0);
- `dontMeasure` optionally specifies if user-specified cells, rows or the largest entries should *not* be measured (default: 0);
- `delimiterRegEx` optionally specifies the pattern matching to be used for the alignment delimiter (default: `'(?!(\\)(\\)'`);
- `delimiterJustification` optionally specifies the justification for the alignment delimiters (default: left); note that this feature is only useful if you have delimiters of different lengths in the same column, discussed in Section 5.5.4;
- `lookForChildCodeBlocks` optionally instructs `latexindent.pl` to search for child code blocks or not (default: 1), discussed in Section 5.5.5.

We will explore most of these features using the file `tabular2.tex` in Listing 59 (which contains a `\multicolumn` command), and the YAML files in Listings 60 to 66; we will explore `alignFinalDoubleBackSlash` in Listing 87; the `dontMeasure` feature will be described in Section 5.5.3, and `delimiterRegEx` in Section 5.5.4.

LISTING 59: `tabular2.tex`

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A&   B & C       & & D\\
AAA&   BBB & CCC       & & DDD\\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading}\\
one&   two & three     & & four\\
five& & six       & & \\
seven & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 60: `tabular2.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    multiColumnGrouping: 1
```

LISTING 61: `tabular3.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims: 0
```

LISTING 62: `tabular4.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand: 4
```

LISTING 63: `tabular5.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    spacesAfterAmpersand: 4
```

LISTING 64: `tabular6.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    alignDoubleBackSlash: 0
```

LISTING 65: `tabular7.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash: 0
```

LISTING 66: `tabular8.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    justification: "right"
```

On running the commands





```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular6.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular7.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular2.tex -l tabular2.yaml,tabular8.yaml
```

we obtain the respective outputs given in Listings 67 to 74.

LISTING 67: tabular2.tex default output

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A                & & & \\
AAA              & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} \\
one              & & & \\
five             & & & \\
seven            & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 68: tabular2.tex using Listing 60

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & B      & & \\
AAA    & BBB    & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} \\
one  & two    & & \\
five &        & & \\
seven &        & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 69: tabular2.tex using Listing 61

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & B      & C      & D      \\
AAA    & BBB    & CCC    & DDD    \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} \\
one  & two    & three   & four   \\
five &        & six     &        \\
seven &        &         &        \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 70: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 62

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & B      & & \\
AAA    & BBB    & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} \\
one  & two    & & \\
five &        & & \\
seven &        & & \\
\end{tabular}
```



LISTING 71: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 63

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & C      & & D      & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & three  & & four   & & & \\
five   & & & & & & six    & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 72: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 64

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & C      & & D      & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & three  & & four   & & & \\
five   & & & & & & six    & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 73: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 65

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & C      & & D      & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & three  & & four   & & & \\
five   & & & & & & six    & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 74: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 66

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
A      & & B      & & & & C      & & D      & & & \\
AAA    & & BBB    & & & & CCC    & & DDD    & & & \\
\multicolumn{2}{c}{first heading} & & & \multicolumn{2}{c}{second heading} & & & & & & \\
one    & & two    & & & & three  & & four   & & & \\
five   & & & & & & six    & & & & & \\
seven  & & & & & & & & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

Notice in particular:

- in both Listings 67 and 68 all rows have been aligned at the ampersand, even those that do not contain the maximum number of ampersands (3 ampersands, in this case);
- in Listing 67 the columns have been aligned at the ampersand;
- in Listing 68 the `\multicolumn` command has grouped the 2 columns beneath *and* above it, because `multiColumnGrouping` is set to 1 in Listing 60;
- in Listing 69 rows 3 and 6 have *not* been aligned at the ampersand, because `alignRowsWithoutMaxDelims` has been set to 0 in Listing 61; however, the `\\` have still been aligned;
- in Listing 70 the columns beneath and above the `\multicolumn` commands have been grouped (because `multiColumnGrouping` is set to 1), and there are at least 4 spaces *before* each aligned ampersand because `spacesBeforeAmpersand` is set to 4;
- in Listing 71 the columns beneath and above the `\multicolumn` commands have been grouped (because `multiColumnGrouping` is set to 1), and there are at least 4 spaces *after* each aligned ampersand because `spacesAfterAmpersand` is set to 4;



- in Listing 72 the `\` have *not* been aligned, because `alignDoubleBackSlash` is set to 0, otherwise the output is the same as Listing 68;
- in Listing 73 the `\` have been aligned, and because `spacesBeforeDoubleBackSlash` is set to 0, there are no spaces ahead of them; the output is otherwise the same as Listing 68;
- in Listing 74 the cells have been *right*-justified; note that cells above and below the `\multicol` statements have still been group correctly, because of the settings in Listing 60.

### 5.5.1 lookForAlignDelims: spacesBeforeAmpersand

U: 2021-06-19

The `spacesBeforeAmpersand` can be specified in a few different ways. The *basic* form is demonstrated in Listing 62, but we can customise the behaviour further by specifying if we would like this value to change if it encounters a *leading blank column*; that is, when the first column contains only zero-width entries. We refer to this as the *advanced* form.

We demonstrate this feature in relation to Listing 75; upon running the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -o=+-default
```

then we receive the default output given in Listing 76.

LISTING 75: aligned1.tex	LISTING 76: aligned1-default.tex
<pre>\begin{aligned} &amp; a \&amp; b, \backslash &amp; c \&amp; d. \end{aligned}</pre>	<pre>\begin{aligned} &amp; a \&amp; b, \backslash &amp; c \&amp; d. \end{aligned}</pre>

The settings in Listings 77 to 80 are all equivalent; we have used the not-yet discussed `noAdditionalIndent` field (see Section 5.8 on page 50) which will assist in the demonstration in what follows.

LISTING 77: sba1.yaml	LISTING 78: sba2.yaml
<pre>noAdditionalIndent:   aligned: 1 lookForAlignDelims:   aligned: 1</pre>	<pre>noAdditionalIndent:   aligned: 1 lookForAlignDelims:   aligned:     spacesBeforeAmpersand: 1</pre>
LISTING 79: sba3.yaml	LISTING 80: sba4.yaml
<pre>noAdditionalIndent:   aligned: 1 lookForAlignDelims:   aligned:     spacesBeforeAmpersand:       default: 1</pre>	<pre>noAdditionalIndent:   aligned: 1 lookForAlignDelims:   aligned:     spacesBeforeAmpersand:       leadingBlankColumn: 1</pre>

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba2.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba4.yaml
```

then we receive the (same) output given in Listing 81; we note that there is *one space* before each ampersand.



LISTING 81: aligned1-mod1.tex

```
\begin{aligned}
& a \& b, \\
& c \& d.
\end{aligned}
```

We note in particular:

- Listing 77 demonstrates the *basic* form for `lookForAlignDelims`; in this case, the default values are specified as in Listing 58 on page 31;
- Listing 78 demonstrates the *advanced* form for `lookForAlignDelims` and specified `spacesBeforeAmpersand`. The default value is 1;
- Listing 79 demonstrates the new *advanced* way to specify `spacesBeforeAmpersand`, and for us to set the default value that sets the number of spaces before ampersands which are *not* in leading blank columns. The default value is 1.

We note that `leadingBlankColumn` has not been specified in Listing 79, and it will inherit the value from default;

- Listing 80 demonstrates spaces to be used before ampersands for *leading blank columns*. We note that *default* has not been specified, and it will be set to 1 by default.

We can customise the space before the ampersand in the *leading blank column* of Listing 81 by using either of Listings 82 and 83, which are equivalent.

LISTING 82: sba5.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 0
```

LISTING 83: sba6.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 0
      default: 1
```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl aligned1.tex -l sba6.yaml
```

then we receive the (same) output given in Listing 84. We note that the space before the ampersand in the *leading blank column* has been set to 0 by Listing 83.

We can demonstrated this feature further using the settings in Listing 86 which give the output in Listing 85.

LISTING 84: aligned1-mod5.tex

```
\begin{aligned}
& a \& b, \\
& c \& d.
\end{aligned}
```

LISTING 85: aligned1.tex using Listing 86

```
\begin{aligned}
& a\& b, \\
& c\& d.
\end{aligned}
```

LISTING 86: sba7.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  aligned: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  aligned:
    spacesBeforeAmpersand:
      leadingBlankColumn: 3
      default: 0
```

### 5.5.2 lookForAlignDelims: alignFinalDoubleBackSlash

N: 2020-03-21

We explore the `alignFinalDoubleBackSlash` feature by using the file in Listing 87. Upon running the following commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular4.tex -o=+-default
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular4.tex -o=+-FDBS
-y="lookForAlignDelims:tabular:alignFinalDoubleBackSlash:1"
```

then we receive the respective outputs given in Listing 88 and Listing 89.

LISTING 87: tabular4.tex	LISTING 88: tabular4-default.tex	LISTING 89: tabular4-FDBS.tex
<pre>\begin{tabular}{lc}   Name &amp; \shortstack{Hi \\ Lo} \\   Foo &amp; Bar \\ \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>\begin{tabular}{lc}   Name &amp; \shortstack{Hi \\ Lo} \\   Foo &amp; Bar \\ \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>\begin{tabular}{lc}   Name &amp; \shortstack{Hi \\ Lo} \\   Foo &amp; Bar \\ \end{tabular}</pre>

We note that in:

- Listing 88, by default, the *first* set of double back slashes in the first row of the tabular environment have been used for alignment;
- Listing 89, the *final* set of double back slashes in the first row have been used, because we specified `alignFinalDoubleBackSlash` as 1.

As of Version 3.0, the alignment routine works on mandatory and optional arguments within commands, and also within ‘special’ code blocks (see `specialBeginEnd` on page 42); for example, assuming that you have a command called `\matrix` and that it is populated within `lookForAlignDelims` (which it is, by default), and that you run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl matrix1.tex
```

then the before-and-after results shown in Listings 90 and 91 are achievable by default.

LISTING 90: matrix1.tex	LISTING 91: matrix1.tex default output
<pre>\matrix [   1&amp;2   &amp;3\\   4&amp;5&amp;6]{   7&amp;8   &amp;9\\   10&amp;11&amp;12 }</pre>	<pre>\matrix [   1 &amp; 2 &amp; 3 \\   4 &amp; 5 &amp; 6]{   7 &amp; 8 &amp; 9 \\   10 &amp; 11 &amp; 12 }</pre>

If you have blocks of code that you wish to align at the & character that are *not* wrapped in, for example, `\begin{tabular} ... \end{tabular}`, then you can use the mark up illustrated in Listing 92; the default output is shown in Listing 93. Note that the `%*` must be next to each other, but that there can be any number of spaces (possibly none) between the `*` and `\begin{tabular}`; note also that you may use any environment name that you have specified in `lookForAlignDelims`.

LISTING 92: align-block.tex	LISTING 93: align-block.tex default output
<pre>%* \begin{tabular}   1 &amp; 2 &amp; 3 &amp; 4 \\   5 &amp;   &amp; 6 &amp;   \\ %* \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>%* \begin{tabular}   1 &amp; 2 &amp; 3 &amp; 4 \\   5 &amp;   &amp; 6 &amp;   \\ %* \end{tabular}</pre>

With reference to Table 2 on page 49 and the, yet undiscussed, fields of `noAdditionalIndent` and `indentRules` (see Section 5.8 on page 50), these comment-marked blocks are considered environments.

### 5.5.3 lookForAlignDelims: the dontMeasure feature

The `lookForAlignDelims` field can, optionally, receive the `dontMeasure` option which can be specified in a few different ways. We will explore this feature in relation to the code given in Listing 94; the default output is shown in Listing 95.



LISTING 94: tabular-DM.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa&bbbb&ccc&dd\\
11&2&33&4\\
5&66&7&8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 95: tabular-DM.tex default output

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11      & 2      & 33   & 4      \\
5       & 66     & 7    & 8      \\
\end{tabular}
```

The `dontMeasure` field can be specified as `largest`, and in which case, the largest element will not be measured; with reference to the YAML file given in Listing 97, we can run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure1.yaml
```

and receive the output given in Listing 96.

LISTING 96: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 97

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8 \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 97: dontMeasure1.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure: largest
```

We note that the *largest* column entries have not contributed to the measuring routine.

The `dontMeasure` field can also be specified in the form demonstrated in Listing 99. On running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure2.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 98.

LISTING 98: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 99 or Listing 101

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8 \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 99: dontMeasure2.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      - aaaaaa
      - bbbbb
      - ccc
      - dd
```

We note that in Listing 99 we have specified entries not to be measured, one entry per line.

The `dontMeasure` field can also be specified in the forms demonstrated in Listing 101 and Listing 102. Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure4.yaml
```

we receive the output given in Listing 100



LISTING 100: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 101 or Listing 101

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 101: dontMeasure3.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        this: aaaaaa
        applyTo: cell
      -
        this: bbbbbb
      - ccc
      - dd
```

LISTING 102: dontMeasure4.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        regex: [a-z]
        applyTo: cell
```

We note that in:

- Listing 101 we have specified entries not to be measured, each one has a *string* in the *this* field, together with an optional specification of *applyTo* as *cell*;
- Listing 102 we have specified entries not to be measured as a *regular expression* using the *regex* field, together with an optional specification of *applyTo* as *cell* field, together with an optional specification of *applyTo* as *cell*.

In both cases, the default value of *applyTo* is *cell*, and does not need to be specified.

We may also specify the *applyTo* field as *row*, a demonstration of which is given in Listing 104; upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure5.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 103.

LISTING 103: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 104

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 104: dontMeasure5.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        this: aaaaaa&bbbb&ccc&dd\\
        applyTo: row
```

Finally, the *applyTo* field can be specified as *row*, together with a *regex* expression. For example, for the settings given in Listing 106, upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM.tex -l=dontMeasure6.yaml
```

LISTING 105: tabular-DM.tex using Listing 106

```
\begin{tabular}{cccc}
aaaaaa & bbbbbb & ccc & dd \\
11 & 2 & 33 & 4 \\
5 & 66 & 7 & 8
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 106: dontMeasure6.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabular:
    dontMeasure:
      -
        regex: [a-z]
        applyTo: row
```

#### 5.5.4 lookForAlignDelims: the delimiterRegEx and delimiterJustification feature

The delimiter alignment will, by default, align code blocks at the ampersand character. The behaviour is controlled by the *delimiterRegEx* field within *lookForAlignDelims*; the default value is `'(?!(\\)(&))'`, which can be read as: *an ampersand, as long as it is not immediately preceded by a backslash*.

**Warning!**

Important: note the ‘capturing’ parenthesis in the (&) which are necessary; if you intend to customise this field, then be sure to include them appropriately.

We demonstrate how to customise this with respect to the code given in Listing 107; the default output from `latexindent.pl` is given in Listing 108.

LISTING 107: `tabbing.tex`

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
  \>2\> 1 \> 7 \> 3 \\
  \>3 \> 2\>8\> 3 \\
  \>4 \>2 \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 108: `tabbing.tex` default output

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
  \>2\> 1 \> 7 \> 3 \\
  \>3 \> 2\>8\> 3 \\
  \>4 \>2 \\
\end{tabbing}
```

Let’s say that we wish to align the code at either the `\=` or `\>`. We employ the settings given in Listing 110 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing.tex -l=delimiterRegEx1.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 109.

LISTING 109: `tabbing.tex` using Listing 110

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
  \> 2   \> 1   \> 7   \> 3   \\
  \> 3   \> 2   \> 8   \> 3   \\
  \> 4   \> 2           \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 110: `delimiterRegEx1.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\\"(?:=|>))'
```

We note that:

- in Listing 109 the code has been aligned, as intended, at both the `\=` and `\>`;
- in Listing 110 we have heeded the warning and captured the expression using grouping parenthesis, specified a backslash using `\\` and said that it must be followed by either `=` or `>`.

We can explore `delimiterRegEx` a little further using the settings in Listing 112 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing.tex -l=delimiterRegEx2.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 111.

LISTING 111: `tabbing.tex` using Listing 112

```
\begin{tabbing}
  aa \=   bb \= cc \= dd \= ee \\
  \> 2   \> 1   \> 7   \> 3   \\
  \> 3   \> 2   \> 8   \> 3   \\
  \> 4   \> 2           \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 112: `delimiterRegEx2.yaml`

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\\">)'
```

We note that only the `\>` have been aligned.

Of course, the other `lookForAlignDelims` options can be used alongside the `delimiterRegEx`; regardless of the type of delimiter being used (ampersand or anything else), the fields from Listing 58 on page 31 remain the same; for example, using the settings in Listing 114, and running





```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing.tex -l=delimiterRegEx3.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 113.

LISTING 113: tabbing.tex using  
Listing 114

```
\begin{tabbing}
aa\=bb\=cc\=dd\=ee \\
\>2 \>1 \>7 \>3 \\
\>3 \>2 \>8 \>3 \\
\>4 \>2 \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 114: delimiterRegEx3.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\|(?=|>))'
    spacesBeforeAmpersand: 0
    spacesAfterAmpersand: 0
```

It is possible that delimiters specified within `delimiterRegEx` can be of different lengths. Consider the file in Listing 115, and associated YAML in Listing 117. Note that the Listing 117 specifies the option for the delimiter to be either `#` or `\>`, which are different lengths. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing1.tex -l=delimiterRegEx4.yaml -o=+-mod4
```

we receive the output in Listing 116.

LISTING 115: tabbing1.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
1#22\>333\\
xxx#aaa#yyyyy\\
.##&\\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 116: tabbing1-mod4.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
1 # 22 \|> 333 \\
xxx # aaa # yyyy \\
. # # & \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 117: delimiterRegEx4.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\|>|\\>|\\#)'
```

You can set the *delimiter* justification as either `left` (default) or `right`, which will only have effect when delimiters in the same column have different lengths. Using the settings in Listing 119 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabbing1.tex -l=delimiterRegEx5.yaml -o=+-mod5
```

gives the output in Listing 118.

LISTING 118: tabbing1-mod5.tex

```
\begin{tabbing}
1 # 22 \|> 333 \\
xxx # aaa # yyyy \\
. # # & \\
\end{tabbing}
```

LISTING 119: delimiterRegEx5.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  tabbing:
    delimiterRegEx: '(\|>|\\>|\\#)'
    delimiterJustification: right
```

Note that in Listing 118 the second set of delimiters have been *right aligned* – it is quite subtle!

### 5.5.5 lookForAlignDelims: lookForChildCodeBlocks

There may be scenarios in which you would prefer to instruct `latexindent.pl` *not* to search for child blocks; in which case setting `lookForChildCodeBlocks` to 0 may be a good way to proceed.

Using the settings from Listing 97 on page 38 on the file in Listing 120 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM-1.tex -l=dontMeasure1.yaml -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output in Listing 121.



LISTING 120: tabular-DM-1.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1&2\only<2->{\ \\
3&4}
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 121: tabular-DM-1-mod1.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1 & 2\only<2->{ \ \\
3 & 4}
\end{tabular}
```

We can improve the output from Listing 121 by employing the settings in Listing 123

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tabular-DM-1.tex -l=dontMeasure1a.yaml -o=+-mod1a
```

which gives the output in Listing 123.

LISTING 122: tabular-DM-1-mod1a.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1 & 2\only<2->{ \ \\
3 & 4}
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 123: dontMeasure1a.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
tabular:
  dontMeasure: largest
  lookForChildCodeBlocks: 0
```

## 5.6 Indent after items, specials and headings

`indentAfterItems:` *(fields)*

The environment names specified in `indentAfterItems` tell `latexindent.pl` to look for `\item` commands; if these switches are set to 1 then indentation will be performed so as indent the code after each item. A demonstration is given in Listings 125 and 126

LISTING 124: indentAfterItems

```
indentAfterItems:
  itemize: 1
  itemize*: 1
  enumerate: 1
  enumerate*: 1
  description: 1
  description*: 1
  list: 1
```

LISTING 125: items1.tex

```
\begin{itemize}
\item some text here
some more text here
some more text here
\item another item
some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

LISTING 126: items1.tex default output

```
\begin{itemize}
\item some text here
some more text here
some more text here
\item another item
some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

`itemNames:` *(fields)*

If you have your own item commands (perhaps you prefer to use `myitem`, for example) then you can put populate them in `itemNames`. For example, users of the `exam` document class might like to add parts to `indentAfterItems` and part to `itemNames` to their user settings (see Section 4 on page 20 for details of how to configure user settings, and Listing 29 on page 21 in particular.)

LISTING 127: itemNames

```
itemNames:
  item: 1
  myitem: 1
```

`specialBeginEnd:` *(fields)*

The fields specified in `specialBeginEnd` are, in their default state, focused on math mode begin and end statements, but there is no requirement for this to be the case; Listing 128 shows the default settings of `specialBeginEnd`.

LISTING 128: specialBeginEnd

```
253 specialBeginEnd:
254   displayMath:
255     begin: '\\\[
256     end: '\\]'
257     lookForThis: 1
258   inlineMath:
259     begin: '(?!\\$)(?!\\$)\\$(?!\\$)'
260     end: '(?!\\$)\\$(?!\\$)'
261     lookForThis: 1
262   displayMathTeX:
263     begin: '\\$\\$'
264     end: '\\$\\$'
265     lookForThis: 1
266   specialBeforeCommand: 0
```

The field `displayMath` represents `\[...]`, `inlineMath` represents `...$` and `displayMathTeX` represents `$$...$$`. You can, of course, rename these in your own YAML files (see Section 4.2 on page 21); indeed, you might like to set up your own special begin and end statements.

A demonstration of the before-and-after results are shown in Listings 129 and 130.

LISTING 129: special1.tex before	LISTING 130: special1.tex default output
The function $f$ has formula $\left[ \right.$ $f(x)=x^2.$ $\left. \right]$ If you like splitting dollars, $\$$ $g(x)=f(2x)$ $\$$	The function $f$ has formula $\left[ \right.$ $f(x)=x^2.$ $\left. \right]$ If you like splitting dollars, $\$$ $g(x)=f(2x)$ $\$$

For each field, `lookForThis` is set to 1 by default, which means that `latexindent.pl` will look for this pattern; you can tell `latexindent.pl` not to look for the pattern, by setting `lookForThis` to 0.

N: 2017-08-21

There are examples in which it is advantageous to search for `specialBeginEnd` fields *before* searching for commands, and the `specialBeforeCommand` switch controls this behaviour. For example, consider the file shown in Listing 131.

LISTING 131: specialLR.tex

```
\begin{equation}
\left[
\sqrt{
a+b
}
\right]
\end{equation}
```

Now consider the YAML files shown in Listings 132 and 133

LISTING 132: specialsLeftRight.yaml	LISTING 133: specialBeforeCommand.yaml
specialBeginEnd:   leftRightSquare:     begin: '\\left\[     end: '\\right\]'     lookForThis: 1	specialBeginEnd:   specialBeforeCommand: 1

Upon running the following commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl specialLR.tex -l=specialsLeftRight.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl specialLR.tex -l=specialsLeftRight.yaml,specialBeforeCommand.yaml
```

we receive the respective outputs in Listings 134 and 135.

LISTING 134: specialLR.tex using Listing 132

```
\begin{equation}
\left[
\sqrt{
a+b
}
\right]
\end{equation}
```

LISTING 135: specialLR.tex using Listings 132 and 133

```
\begin{equation}
\left[
\sqrt{
a+b
}
\right]
\end{equation}
```

Notice that in:

- Listing 134 the `\left` has been treated as a *command*, with one optional argument;
- Listing 135 the specialBeginEnd pattern in Listing 132 has been obeyed because Listing 133 specifies that the specialBeginEnd should be sought *before* commands.

N: 2018-04-27

You can, optionally, specify the middle field for anything that you specify in specialBeginEnd. For example, let's consider the .tex file in Listing 136.

LISTING 136: special2.tex

```
\If
something 0
\ElIf
something 1
\ElIf
something 2
\ElIf
something 3
\Else
something 4
\EndIf
```

Upon saving the YAML settings in Listings 137 and 139 and running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special2.tex -l=middle
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special2.tex -l=middle1
```

then we obtain the output given in Listings 138 and 140.

LISTING 137: middle.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  If:
    begin: '\\If'
    middle: '\\ElIf'
    end: '\\EndIf'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 138: special2.tex using Listing 137

```
\If
something 0
\ElIf
something 1
\ElIf
something 2
\ElIf
something 3
\Else
something 4
\EndIf
```



LISTING 139: middle1.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  If:
    begin: '\\If'
    middle:
      - '\\ElsIf'
      - '\\Else'
    end: '\\EndIf'
    lookForThis: 1
```

LISTING 140: special2.tex using Listing 139

```
\If
  something 0
\ElsIf
  something 1
\ElsIf
  something 2
\ElsIf
  something 3
\Else
  something 4
\EndIf
```

We note that:

- in Listing 138 the bodies of each of the `Elsif` statements have been indented appropriately;
- the `Else` statement has *not* been indented appropriately in Listing 138 – read on!
- we have specified multiple settings for the `middle` field using the syntax demonstrated in Listing 139 so that the body of the `Else` statement has been indented appropriately in Listing 140.

N: 2018-08-13

You may specify fields in `specialBeginEnd` to be treated as verbatim code blocks by changing `lookForThis` to be `verbatim`.

For example, beginning with the code in Listing 142 and the YAML in Listing 141, and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special3.tex -l=special-verb1
```

then the output in Listing 142 is unchanged.

LISTING 141: special-verb1.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  displayMath:
    lookForThis: verbatim
```

LISTING 142: special3.tex and output using Listing 141

```
\[
  special code
blocks
  can be
  treated
  as verbatim\]
```

We can combine the `specialBeginEnd` with the `lookForAlignDelims` feature. We begin with the code in Listing 143.

LISTING 143: special-align.tex

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path (A) edge node {0,1,L}(B)
  edge node {1,1,R} (C)
  (B) edge [loop above]node {1,1,L}(B)
  edge node {0,1,L}(C)
  (C) edge node {0,1,L}(D)
  edge [bend left]node {1,0,R}(E)
  (D) edge[loop below] node {1,1,R}(D)
  edge node {0,1,R}(A)
  (E) edge[bend left] node {1,0,R} (A);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Let's assume that our goal is to align the code at the edge and node text; we employ the code given in Listing 144 and run the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special-align.tex -l edge-node1.yaml -o=+-mod1
```

to receive the output in Listing 145.

LISTING 144: edge-node1.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  path:
    begin: '\\path'
    end: ';'
    lookForThis: 1
    specialBeforeCommand: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  path:
    delimiterRegEx: '(edge|node)'
```

LISTING 145: special-align.tex using Listing 144

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path (A) edge node {0,1,L} (B)
         edge node {1,1,R} (C)
        (B) edge [loop above] node {1,1,L} (B)
         edge node {0,1,L} (C)
        (C) edge node {0,1,L} (D)
         edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (E)
        (D) edge [loop below] node {1,1,R} (D)
         edge node {0,1,R} (A)
        (E) edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (A);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

The output in Listing 145 is not quite ideal. We can tweak the settings within Listing 144 in order to improve the output; in particular, we employ the code in Listing 146 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special-align.tex -l edge-node2.yaml -o=+-mod2
```

to receive the output in Listing 147.

LISTING 146: edge-node2.yaml

```
specialBeginEnd:
  path:
    begin: '\\path'
    end: ';'
    specialBeforeCommand: 1
lookForAlignDelims:
  path:
    delimiterRegEx:
      '(edge|node|h*\{[0-9,A-Z]+\})'
```

LISTING 147: special-align.tex using Listing 146

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path (A) edge node {0,1,L} (B)
         edge node {1,1,R} (C)
        (B) edge [loop above] node {1,1,L} (B)
         edge node {0,1,L} (C)
        (C) edge node {0,1,L} (D)
         edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (E)
        (D) edge [loop below] node {1,1,R} (D)
         edge node {0,1,R} (A)
        (E) edge [bend left] node {1,0,R} (A);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

U: 2021-06-19

The lookForThis field can be considered optional; by default, it is assumed to be 1, which is demonstrated in Listing 146.

**indentAfterHeadings:** *<fields>*

This field enables the user to specify indentation rules that take effect after heading commands such as `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection*`, or indeed any user-specified command written in this field.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>5</sup>There is a slight difference in interface for this field when comparing Version 2.2 to Version 3.0; see appendix J on page 152 for details.



LISTING 148: indentAfterHeadings

```

276 indentAfterHeadings:
277   part:
278     indentAfterThisHeading: 0
279     level: 1
280   chapter:
281     indentAfterThisHeading: 0
282     level: 2
283   section:
284     indentAfterThisHeading: 0
285     level: 3

```

The default settings do *not* place indentation after a heading, but you can easily switch them on by changing `indentAfterThisHeading` from 0 to 1. The `level` field tells `latexindent.pl` the hierarchy of the heading structure in your document. You might, for example, like to have both section and subsection set with `level: 3` because you do not want the indentation to go too deep.

You can add any of your own custom heading commands to this field, specifying the `level` as appropriate. You can also specify your own indentation in `indentRules` (see Section 5.8 on page 50); you will find the default `indentRules` contains `chapter: " "` which tells `latexindent.pl` simply to use a space character after chapter headings (once `indent` is set to 1 for chapter).

For example, assuming that you have the code in Listing 149 saved into `headings1.yaml`, and that you have the text from Listing 150 saved into `headings1.tex`.

LISTING 149: headings1.yaml

```

indentAfterHeadings:
  subsection:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 2

```

LISTING 150: headings1.tex

```

\subsection{subsection title}
subsection text
subsection text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
paragraph text
paragraph text

```

If you run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings1.tex -l=headings1.yaml
```

then you should receive the output given in Listing 151.

LISTING 151: headings1.tex using Listing 149

```

\subsection{subsection title}
__subsection text
__subsection text
__\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text
__\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text

```

LISTING 152: headings1.tex second modification

```

\subsection{subsection title}
__subsection text
__subsection text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text
\paragraph{paragraph title}
__paragraph text
__paragraph text

```

Now say that you modify the YAML from Listing 149 so that the paragraph `level` is 1; after running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings1.tex -l=headings1.yaml
```



you should receive the code given in Listing 152; notice that the paragraph and subsection are at the same indentation level.

`maximumIndentation:`  $\langle$ horizontal space $\rangle$

N: 2017-08-21

You can control the maximum indentation given to your file by specifying the `maximumIndentation` field as horizontal space (but *not* including tabs). This feature uses the `Text::Tabs` module [38], and is *off* by default.

For example, consider the example shown in Listing 153 together with the default output shown in Listing 154.

LISTING 153: `mult-nested.tex`

```
\begin{one}
one
\begin{two}
  two
\begin{three}
    three
\begin{four}
      four
\end{four}
\end{three}
\end{two}
\end{one}
```

LISTING 154: `mult-nested.tex`  
default output

```
\begin{one}
__one
__\begin{two}
___two
___\begin{three}
____three
____\begin{four}
_____four
_____end{four}
____end{three}
___end{two}
__end{one}
```

Now say that, for example, you have the `max-indentation1.yaml` from Listing 155 and that you run the following command:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mult-nested.tex -l=max-indentation1
```

You should receive the output shown in Listing 156.

LISTING 155: `max-indentation1.yaml`

```
maximumIndentation: " "
```

LISTING 156: `mult-nested.tex` using  
Listing 155

```
\begin{one}
␣one
␣\begin{two}
␣two
␣\begin{three}
␣three
␣\begin{four}
␣four
␣\end{four}
␣\end{three}
␣\end{two}
␣\end{one}
```

Comparing the output in Listings 154 and 156 we notice that the (default) tabs of indentation have been replaced by a single space.

In general, when using the `maximumIndentation` feature, any leading tabs will be replaced by equivalent spaces except, of course, those found in `verbatimEnvironments` (see Listing 34 on page 26) or `noIndentBlock` (see Listing 40 on page 27).

## 5.7 The code blocks known latexindent.pl

As of Version 3.0, `latexindent.pl` processes documents using code blocks; each of these are shown in Table 2.





TABLE 2: Code blocks known to latexindent.pl

Code block	characters allowed in name	example
environments	a-zA-Z@\\*0-9_\\	<code>\begin{myenv}</code> body of myenv <code>\end{myenv}</code>
optionalArguments	<i>inherits</i> name from parent (e.g environment name)	[ opt arg text ]
mandatoryArguments	<i>inherits</i> name from parent (e.g environment name)	{ mand arg text }
commands	+a-zA-Z@\\*0-9_\\:	<code>\mycommand{arguments}</code>
keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets	a-zA-Z@\\*0-9_\\/.\\h\\{\\}:\\#-	<code>my key/.style={arguments}</code>
namedGroupingBracesBrackets	0-9\\.a-zA-Z@\\*\\><	<code>in{arguments}</code>
UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets	<i>No name!</i>	{ or [ or , or \& or ) or ( or \$ followed by <code>{arguments}</code>
ifElseFi	@a-zA-Z but must begin with either <code>\if</code> of <code>\@if</code>	<code>\ifnum...</code> ... <code>\else</code> ... <code>\fi</code>
items	User specified, see Listings 124 and 127 on page 42	<code>\begin{enumerate}</code> <code>\item ...</code> <code>\end{enumerate}</code>
specialBeginEnd	User specified, see Listing 128 on page 43	<code>\[</code> ... <code>\]</code>
afterHeading	User specified, see Listing 148 on page 47	<code>\chapter{title}</code> ... <code>\section{title}</code>
filecontents	User specified, see Listing 50 on page 29	<code>\begin{filecontents}</code> ... <code>\end{filecontents}</code>



N: 2019-07-13

We will refer to these code blocks in what follows. Note that the fine tuning of the definition of the code blocks detailed in Table 2 is discussed in Section 9 on page 124.

## 5.8 noAdditionalIndent and indentRules

latexindent.pl operates on files by looking for code blocks, as detailed in Section 5.7 on page 48; for each type of code block in Table 2 on the preceding page (which we will call a *thing* in what follows) it searches YAML fields for information in the following order:

1. noAdditionalIndent for the *name* of the current *thing*;
2. indentRules for the *name* of the current *thing*;
3. noAdditionalIndentGlobal for the *type* of the current *thing*;
4. indentRulesGlobal for the *type* of the current *thing*.

Using the above list, the first piece of information to be found will be used; failing that, the value of defaultIndent is used. If information is found in multiple fields, the first one according to the list above will be used; for example, if information is present in both indentRules and in noAdditionalIndentGlobal, then the information from indentRules takes priority.

We now present details for the different type of code blocks known to latexindent.pl, as detailed in Table 2 on the previous page; for reference, there follows a list of the code blocks covered.

5.8.1	Environments and their arguments . . . . .	50
5.8.2	Environments with items . . . . .	57
5.8.3	Commands with arguments . . . . .	58
5.8.4	ifelsefi code blocks . . . . .	60
5.8.5	specialBeginEnd code blocks . . . . .	61
5.8.6	afterHeading code blocks . . . . .	62
5.8.7	The remaining code blocks . . . . .	64
5.8.7.1	keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets . . . . .	64
5.8.7.2	namedGroupingBracesBrackets . . . . .	65
5.8.7.3	UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets . . . . .	65
5.8.7.4	filecontents . . . . .	66
5.8.8	Summary . . . . .	66

### 5.8.1 Environments and their arguments

There are a few different YAML switches governing the indentation of environments; let's start with the code shown in Listing 157.

LISTING 157: myenv.tex

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}
  body of environment
body of environment
  body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

noAdditionalIndent: *<fields>*

If we do not wish myenv to receive any additional indentation, we have a few choices available to us, as demonstrated in Listings 158 and 159.



LISTING 158:  
myenv-noAdd1.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv: 1
```

LISTING 159:  
myenv-noAdd2.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 1
```

On applying either of the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd2.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 160; note in particular that the environment `myenv` has not received any *additional* indentation, but that the outer environment *has* still received indentation.

LISTING 160: `myenv.tex` output (using either Listing 158 or Listing 159)

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

Upon changing the YAML files to those shown in Listings 161 and 162, and running either

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd4.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 163.

LISTING 161:  
myenv-noAdd3.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv: 0
```

LISTING 162:  
myenv-noAdd4.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 0
```

LISTING 163: `myenv.tex` output (using either Listing 161 or Listing 162)

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

Let's now allow `myenv` to have some optional and mandatory arguments, as in Listing 164.



LISTING 164: myenv-args.tex

```

\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
  optional argument text
  optional argument text]%
{ mandatory argument text
mandatory argument text}
body of environment
body of environment
body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}

```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l=myenv-noAdd1.yaml myenv-args.tex
```

we obtain the output shown in Listing 165; note that the optional argument, mandatory argument and body *all* have received no additional indent. This is because, when `noAdditionalIndent` is specified in ‘scalar’ form (as in Listing 158), then *all* parts of the environment (body, optional and mandatory arguments) are assumed to want no additional indent.

LISTING 165: myenv-args.tex using Listing 158

```

\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
  optional argument text
  optional argument text]%
{ mandatory argument text
mandatory argument text}
body of environment
body of environment
body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}

```

We may customise `noAdditionalIndent` for optional and mandatory arguments of the `myenv` environment, as shown in, for example, Listings 166 and 167.

LISTING 166:  
myenv-noAdd5.yaml

```

noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 1
    mandatoryArguments: 0

```

LISTING 167:  
myenv-noAdd6.yaml

```

noAdditionalIndent:
  myenv:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 1

```

Upon running

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-noAdd6.yaml

```

we obtain the respective outputs given in Listings 168 and 169. Note that in Listing 168 the text for the *optional* argument has not received any additional indentation, and that in Listing 169 the *mandatory* argument has not received any additional indentation; in both cases, the *body* has not received any additional indentation.



LISTING 168: myenv-args.tex using Listing 166

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 169: myenv-args.tex using Listing 167

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

`indentRules: {fields}`

We may also specify indentation rules for environment code blocks using the `indentRules` field; see, for example, Listings 170 and 171.

LISTING 170: myenv-rules1.yaml

```
indentRules:
  myenv: "    "
```

LISTING 171: myenv-rules2.yaml

```
indentRules:
  myenv:
    body: "    "
```

On applying either of the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-rules1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv.tex -l myenv-rules2.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 172; note in particular that the environment `myenv` has received one tab (from the outer environment) plus three spaces from Listing 170 or 171.

LISTING 172: myenv.tex output (using either Listing 170 or Listing 171)

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

If you specify a field in `indentRules` using anything other than horizontal space, it will be ignored.

Returning to the example in Listing 164 that contains optional and mandatory arguments. Upon using Listing 170 as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l=myenv-rules1.yaml
```

we obtain the output in Listing 173; note that the body, optional argument and mandatory argument of `myenv` have *all* received the same customised indentation.



LISTING 173: myenv-args.tex using Listing 170

```

\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    \optionalargument\text
    \optionalargument\text]%
    \{ \mandatoryargument\text
    \mandatoryargument\text}
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}

```

You can specify different indentation rules for the different features using, for example, Listings 174 and 175

LISTING 174: myenv-rules3.yaml

```

indentRules:
  myenv:
    body: "  "
    optionalArguments: " "

```

LISTING 175: myenv-rules4.yaml

```

indentRules:
  myenv:
    body: "  "
    mandatoryArguments: "\t\t"

```

After running

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules4.yaml

```

then we obtain the respective outputs given in Listings 176 and 177.

LISTING 176: myenv-args.tex using Listing 174

```

\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    \optionalargument\text
    \optionalargument\text]%
    \{ \mandatoryargument\text
    \mandatoryargument\text}
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}

```

LISTING 177: myenv-args.tex using Listing 175

```

\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    \optionalargument\text
    \optionalargument\text]%
    \{ \mandatoryargument\text
    \mandatoryargument\text}
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
    \bodyofenvironment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}

```

Note that in Listing 176, the optional argument has only received a single space of indentation, while the mandatory argument has received the default (tab) indentation; the environment body has received three spaces of indentation.

In Listing 177, the optional argument has received the default (tab) indentation, the mandatory argument has received two tabs of indentation, and the body has received three spaces of indentation.

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal: {fields}
```

Assuming that your environment name is not found within neither `noAdditionalIndent` nor `indentRules`, the next place that `latexindent.pl` will look is `noAdditionalIndentGlobal`, and in particular for the *environments* key (see Listing 178).



## LISTING 178: noAdditionalIndentGlobal

```
334 noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
335     environments: 0
```

Let's say that you change the value of environments to 1 in Listing 178, and that you run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l env-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules1.yaml,env-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml
```

The respective output from these two commands are in Listings 179 and 180; in Listing 179 notice that *both* environments receive no additional indentation but that the arguments of myenv still *do* receive indentation. In Listing 180 notice that the *outer* environment does not receive additional indentation, but because of the settings from myenv-rules1.yaml (in Listing 170 on page 53), the myenv environment still *does* receive indentation.

## LISTING 179: myenv-args.tex using Listing 178

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
{ mandatory argument text
  mandatory argument text}
body of environment
body of environment
body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

## LISTING 180: myenv-args.tex using Listings 170 and 178

```
\begin{outer}
\begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
{ mandatory argument text
  mandatory argument text}
body of environment
body of environment
body of environment
\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

In fact, noAdditionalIndentGlobal also contains keys that control the indentation of optional and mandatory arguments; on referencing Listings 181 and 182

LISTING 181:  
opt-args-no-add-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
    optionalArguments: 1
```

LISTING 182:  
mand-args-no-add-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
    mandatoryArguments: 1
```

we may run the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local opt-args-no-add-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local mand-args-no-add-glob.yaml
```

which produces the respective outputs given in Listings 183 and 184. Notice that in Listing 183 the *optional* argument has not received any additional indentation, and in Listing 184 the *mandatory* argument has not received any additional indentation.



LISTING 183: myenv-args.tex using Listing 181

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 184: myenv-args.tex using Listing 182

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

```
indentRulesGlobal: {fields}
```

The final check that `latexindent.pl` will make is to look for `indentRulesGlobal` as detailed in Listing 185.

LISTING 185: indentRulesGlobal

```
350 indentRulesGlobal:
351 environments: 0
```

If you change the `environments` field to anything involving horizontal space, say " ", and then run the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l env-indentRules.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -l myenv-rules1.yaml,env-indentRules.yaml
```

then the respective output is shown in Listings 186 and 187. Note that in Listing 186, both the environment blocks have received a single-space indentation, whereas in Listing 187 the outer environment has received single-space indentation (specified by `indentRulesGlobal`), but `myenv` has received " ", as specified by the particular `indentRules` for `myenv` Listing 170 on page 53.

LISTING 186: myenv-args.tex using Listing 185

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 187: myenv-args.tex using Listings 170 and 185

```
\begin{outer}
  \begin{myenv}[%
    optional argument text
    optional argument text]%
    { mandatory argument text
      mandatory argument text}
    body of environment
    body of environment
    body of environment
  \end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

You can specify `indentRulesGlobal` for both optional and mandatory arguments, as detailed in Listings 188 and 189

LISTING 188:

```
opt-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml
```

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  optionalArguments: "\t\t"
```

LISTING 189:

```
mand-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml
```

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  mandatoryArguments: "\t\t"
```

Upon running the following commands





```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local opt-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myenv-args.tex -local mand-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml
```

we obtain the respective outputs in Listings 190 and 191. Note that the *optional* argument in Listing 190 has received two tabs worth of indentation, while the *mandatory* argument has done so in Listing 191.

LISTING 190: myenv-args.tex using Listing 188

```
\begin{outer}
__\begin{myenv}[%
____optional argument text
____optional argument text]%
____{ mandatory argument text
____mandatory argument text}
____body of environment
____body of environment
____body of environment
__\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

LISTING 191: myenv-args.tex using Listing 189

```
\begin{outer}
__\begin{myenv}[%
____optional argument text
____optional argument text]%
____{ mandatory argument text
____mandatory argument text}
____body of environment
____body of environment
____body of environment
__\end{myenv}
\end{outer}
```

### 5.8.2 Environments with items

With reference to Listings 124 and 127 on page 42, some commands may contain *item* commands; for the purposes of this discussion, we will use the code from Listing 125 on page 42.

Assuming that you've populated *itemNames* with the name of your *item*, you can put the item name into *noAdditionalIndent* as in Listing 192, although a more efficient approach may be to change the relevant field in *itemNames* to 0. Similarly, you can customise the indentation that your *item* receives using *indentRules*, as in Listing 193

LISTING 192: item-noAdd1.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  item: 1
# itemNames:
#   item: 0
```

LISTING 193: item-rules1.yaml

```
indentRules:
  item: " "
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local item-noAdd1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local item-rules1.yaml
```

the respective outputs are given in Listings 194 and 195; note that in Listing 194 that the text after each *item* has not received any additional indentation, and in Listing 195, the text after each *item* has received a single space of indentation, specified by Listing 193.

LISTING 194: items1.tex using Listing 192

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item some text here
  some more text here
  some more text here
  \item another item
  some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

LISTING 195: items1.tex using Listing 193

```
\begin{itemize}
__\item some text here
__some more text here
__some more text here
__\item another item
__some more text here
\end{itemize}
```

Alternatively, you might like to populate *noAdditionalIndentGlobal* or *indentRulesGlobal* using the *items* key, as demonstrated in Listings 196 and 197. Note that there is a need to 'reset/remove' the *item* field from *indentRules* in both cases (see the hierarchy description given on page 50) as the *item* command is a member of *indentRules* by default.



LISTING 196:  
items-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml

```
indentRules:
  item: 0
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  items: 1
```

LISTING 197:  
items-indentRulesGlobal.yaml

```
indentRules:
  item: 0
indentRulesGlobal:
  items: " "
```

Upon running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local items-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl items1.tex -local items-indentRulesGlobal.yaml
```

the respective outputs from Listings 194 and 195 are obtained; note, however, that *all* such item commands without their own individual noAdditionalIndent or indentRules settings would behave as in these listings.

### 5.8.3 Commands with arguments

Let's begin with the simple example in Listing 198; when latexindent.pl operates on this file, the default output is shown in Listing 199.<sup>6</sup>

LISTING 198: mycommand.tex

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 199: mycommand.tex default output

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

As in the environment-based case (see Listings 158 and 159 on page 51) we may specify noAdditionalIndent either in 'scalar' form, or in 'field' form, as shown in Listings 200 and 201

LISTING 200:  
mycommand-noAdd1.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand: 1
```

LISTING 201:  
mycommand-noAdd2.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 1
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd2.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 202 and 203

<sup>6</sup>The command code blocks have quite a few subtleties, described in Section 5.9 on page 66.



LISTING 202: mycommand.tex using Listing 200

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 203: mycommand.tex using Listing 201

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

Note that in Listing 202 that the ‘body’, optional argument *and* mandatory argument have *all* received no additional indentation, while in Listing 203, only the ‘body’ has not received any additional indentation. We define the ‘body’ of a command as any lines following the command name that include its optional or mandatory arguments.

We may further customise noAdditionalIndent for mycommand as we did in Listings 166 and 167 on page 52; explicit examples are given in Listings 204 and 205.

LISTING 204:  
mycommand-noAdd3.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 1
    mandatoryArguments: 0
```

LISTING 205:  
mycommand-noAdd4.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 1
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd4.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 206 and 207.

LISTING 206: mycommand.tex using Listing 204

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 207: mycommand.tex using Listing 205

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

Attentive readers will note that the body of mycommand in both Listings 206 and 207 has received no additional indent, even though body is explicitly set to 0 in both Listings 204 and 205. This is because, by default, noAdditionalIndentGlobal for commands is set to 1 by default; this can be easily fixed as in Listings 208 and 209.

LISTING 208:  
mycommand-noAdd5.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 1
    mandatoryArguments: 0
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  commands: 0
```

LISTING 209:  
mycommand-noAdd6.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  mycommand:
    body: 0
    optionalArguments: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 1
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  commands: 0
```



After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd5.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl mycommand.tex -l mycommand-noAdd6.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 210 and 211.

LISTING 210: mycommand.tex using Listing 208

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

LISTING 211: mycommand.tex using Listing 209

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
[
  opt arg text
  opt arg text
]
```

Both `indentRules` and `indentRulesGlobal` can be adjusted as they were for *environment* code blocks, as in Listings 174 and 175 on page 54 and Listings 185, 188 and 189 on page 56.

#### 5.8.4 ifelsefi code blocks

Let's use the simple example shown in Listing 212; when `latexindent.pl` operates on this file, the output as in Listing 213; note that the body of each of the `\if` statements have been indented, and that the `\else` statement has been accounted for correctly.

LISTING 212: ifelsefi1.tex

```
\ifodd\radius
\ifnum\radius<14
\pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
\else
\pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
\fi\fi
```

LISTING 213: ifelsefi1.tex default output

```
\ifodd\radius
  \ifnum\radius<14
    \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
  \else
    \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
  \fi\fi
```

It is recommended to specify `noAdditionalIndent` and `indentRules` in the 'scalar' form only for these type of code blocks, although the 'field' form would work, assuming that body was specified. Examples are shown in Listings 214 and 215.

LISTING 214:  
ifnum-noAdd.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  ifnum: 1
```

LISTING 215:  
ifnum-indent-rules.yaml

```
indentRules:
  ifnum: " "
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -local ifnum-noAdd.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -l ifnum-indent-rules.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 216 and 217; note that in Listing 216, the `ifnum` code block has *not* received any additional indentation, while in Listing 217, the `ifnum` code block has received one tab and two spaces of indentation.



LISTING 216: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 214

```
\ifodd\radius
  \ifnum\radius<14
    \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
  \else
    \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
  \fi\fi
```

LISTING 217: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 215

```
\ifodd\radius
  —\ifnum\radius<14
  —\pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
  —\else
  —\pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
  —\fi\fi
```

We may specify noAdditionalIndentGlobal and indentRulesGlobal as in Listings 218 and 219.

LISTING 218:  
ifelsefi-noAdd-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  ifElseFi: 1
```

LISTING 219:  
ifelsefi-indent-rules-global.yaml

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  ifElseFi: " "
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -local ifelsefi-noAdd-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl ifelsefi1.tex -l ifelsefi-indent-rules-global.yaml
```

we receive the outputs in Listings 220 and 221; notice that in Listing 220 neither of the ifelsefi code blocks have received indentation, while in Listing 221 both code blocks have received a single space of indentation.

LISTING 220: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 218

```
\ifodd\radius
\ifnum\radius<14
\pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
\else
\pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
\fi\fi
```

LISTING 221: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 219

```
\ifodd\radius
 \ifnum\radius<14
  \pgfmathparse{100-(\radius)*4};
 \else
  \pgfmathparse{200-(\radius)*3};
 \fi\fi
```

U: 2018-04-27

We can further explore the treatment of ifElseFi code blocks in Listing 222, and the associated default output given in Listing 223; note, in particular, that the bodies of each of the ‘or statements’ have been indented.

LISTING 222: ifelsefi2.tex

```
\ifcase#1
zero%
\or
one%
\or
two%
\or
three%
\else
default
\fi
```

LISTING 223: ifelsefi2.tex default output

```
\ifcase#1
  zero%
\or
  one%
\or
  two%
\or
  three%
\else
  default
\fi
```

### 5.8.5 specialBeginEnd code blocks

Let’s use the example from Listing 129 on page 43 which has default output shown in Listing 130 on page 43.

It is recommended to specify noAdditionalIndent and indentRules in the ‘scalar’ form for these type of code blocks, although the ‘field’ form would work, assuming that body was specified. Examples are shown in Listings 224 and 225.



LISTING 224:  
displayMath-noAdd.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndent:
  displayMath: 1
```

LISTING 225:  
displayMath-indent-rules.yaml

```
indentRules:
  displayMath: "\t\t\t"
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -local displayMath-noAdd.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -l displayMath-indent-rules.yaml
```

we receive the respective output given in Listings 226 and 227; note that in Listing 226, the displayMath code block has *not* received any additional indentation, while in Listing 227, the displayMath code block has received three tabs worth of indentation.

LISTING 226: special1.tex using  
Listing 224

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
  g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

LISTING 227: special1.tex using  
Listing 225

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
_____f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
  _g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

We may specify noAdditionalIndentGlobal and indentRulesGlobal as in Listings 228 and 229.

LISTING 228:  
special-noAdd-glob.yaml

```
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  specialBeginEnd: 1
```

LISTING 229:  
special-indent-rules-global.yaml

```
indentRulesGlobal:
  specialBeginEnd: " "
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -local special-noAdd-glob.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl special1.tex -l special-indent-rules-global.yaml
```

we receive the outputs in Listings 230 and 231; notice that in Listing 230 neither of the special code blocks have received indentation, while in Listing 231 both code blocks have received a single space of indentation.

LISTING 230: special1.tex using  
Listing 228

```
The function $f$ has formula
\[
f(x)=x^2.
\]
If you like splitting dollars,
$
g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

LISTING 231: special1.tex using  
Listing 229

```
The_function_$f$_has_formula
\[
_f(x)=x^2.
\]
If_you_like_splitting_dollars,
$
_g(x)=f(2x)
$
```

### 5.8.6 afterHeading code blocks

Let's use the example Listing 232 for demonstration throughout this Section. As discussed on page 47, by default latexindent.pl will not add indentation after headings.



LISTING 232: headings2.tex

```
\paragraph{paragraph
title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

On using the YAML file in Listing 234 by running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings2.tex -l headings3.yaml
```

we obtain the output in Listing 233. Note that the argument of `paragraph` has received (default) indentation, and that the body after the heading statement has received (default) indentation.

LISTING 233: headings2.tex using Listing 234

```
\paragraph{paragraph
          title}
      paragraph text
      paragraph text
```

LISTING 234: headings3.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
```

If we specify `noAdditionalIndent` as in Listing 236 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl headings2.tex -l headings4.yaml
```

then we receive the output in Listing 235. Note that the arguments *and* the body after the heading of `paragraph` has received no additional indentation, because we have specified `noAdditionalIndent` in scalar form.

LISTING 235: headings2.tex using Listing 236

```
\paragraph{paragraph
title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

LISTING 236: headings4.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
noAdditionalIndent:
  paragraph: 1
```

Similarly, if we specify `indentRules` as in Listing 238 and run analogous commands to those above, we receive the output in Listing 237; note that the *body*, *mandatory argument* and content *after the heading* of `paragraph` have *all* received three tabs worth of indentation.

LISTING 237: headings2.tex using Listing 238

```
\paragraph{paragraph
_____title}
_____paragraph text
_____paragraph text
```

LISTING 238: headings5.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
indentRules:
  paragraph: "\t\t\t"
```

We may, instead, specify `noAdditionalIndent` in ‘field’ form, as in Listing 240 which gives the output in Listing 239.



LISTING 239: headings2.tex using  
Listing 240

```
\paragraph{paragraph
  title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

LISTING 240: headings6.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
noAdditionalIndent:
  paragraph:
    body: 0
    mandatoryArguments: 0
    afterHeading: 1
```

Analogously, we may specify `indentRules` as in Listing 242 which gives the output in Listing 241; note that mandatory argument text has only received a single space of indentation, while the body after the heading has received three tabs worth of indentation.

LISTING 241: headings2.tex using  
Listing 242

```
\paragraph{paragraph
_____ title}
_____paragraph text
_____paragraph text
```

LISTING 242: headings7.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
indentRules:
  paragraph:
    mandatoryArguments: " "
    afterHeading: "\t\t\t"
```

Finally, let's consider `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` and `indentRulesGlobal` shown in Listings 244 and 246 respectively, with respective output in Listings 243 and 245. Note that in Listing 244 the *mandatory argument* of `paragraph` has received a (default) tab's worth of indentation, while the body after the heading has received *no additional indentation*. Similarly, in Listing 245, the *argument* has received both a (default) tab plus two spaces of indentation (from the global rule specified in Listing 246), and the remaining body after `paragraph` has received just two spaces of indentation.

LISTING 243: headings2.tex using  
Listing 244

```
\paragraph{paragraph
  title}
paragraph text
paragraph text
```

LISTING 244: headings8.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
  afterHeading: 1
```

LISTING 245: headings2.tex using  
Listing 246

```
\paragraph{paragraph
__\title}
__\paragraph\text
__\paragraph\text
```

LISTING 246: headings9.yaml

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  paragraph:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 1
    level: 1
indentRulesGlobal:
  afterHeading: " "
```

### 5.8.7 The remaining code blocks

Referencing the different types of code blocks in Table 2 on page 49, we have a few code blocks yet to cover; these are very similar to the commands code block type covered comprehensively in Section 5.8.3 on page 58, but a small discussion defining these remaining code blocks is necessary.

#### 5.8.7.1 keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets

`latexindent.pl` defines this type of code block by the following criteria:

- it must immediately follow either `{` OR `[` OR `,` with comments and blank lines allowed.
- then it has a name made up of the characters detailed in Table 2 on page 49;





- then an = symbol;
- then at least one set of curly braces or square brackets (comments and line breaks allowed throughout).

See the `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: follow` and `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: name` fields of the fine tuning section in Listing 510 on page 125

An example is shown in Listing 247, with the default output given in Listing 248.

LISTING 247: pgfkeys1.tex

```
\pgfkeys{/tikz/.cd,
start coordinate/.initial={0,
\vertfactor},
}
```

LISTING 248: pgfkeys1.tex default output

```
\pgfkeys{/tikz/.cd,
__start coordinate/.initial={0,
____\vertfactor},
}
```

In Listing 248, note that the maximum indentation is three tabs, and these come from:

- the `\pgfkeys` command's mandatory argument;
- the `start coordinate/.initial` key's mandatory argument;
- the `start coordinate/.initial` key's body, which is defined as any lines following the name of the key that include its arguments. This is the part controlled by the `body` field for `noAdditionalIndent` and friends from page 50.

### 5.8.7.2 namedGroupingBracesBrackets

This type of code block is mostly motivated by tikz-based code; we define this code block as follows:

- it must immediately follow either *horizontal space* OR *one or more line breaks* OR `{` OR `[` OR `$` OR `)` OR `(`
- the name may contain the characters detailed in Table 2 on page 49;
- then at least one set of curly braces or square brackets (comments and line breaks allowed throughout).

See the `NamedGroupingBracesBrackets: follow` and `NamedGroupingBracesBrackets: name` fields of the fine tuning section in Listing 510 on page 125

A simple example is given in Listing 249, with default output in Listing 250.

LISTING 249: child1.tex

```
\coordinate
child[grow=down]{
edge from parent [antiparticle]
node [above=3pt] {$C$}
}
```

LISTING 250: child1.tex default output

```
\coordinate
child[grow=down]{
____edge from parent [antiparticle]
____node [above=3pt] {$C$}
____}
```

In particular, `latexindent.pl` considers `child`, `parent` and `node` all to be `namedGroupingBracesBrackets`<sup>7</sup>. Referencing Listing 250, note that the maximum indentation is two tabs, and these come from:

- the `child`'s mandatory argument;
- the `child`'s body, which is defined as any lines following the name of the `namedGroupingBracesBrackets` that include its arguments. This is the part controlled by the `body` field for `noAdditionalIndent` and friends from page 50.

### 5.8.7.3 UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets

occur in a variety of situations; specifically, we define this type of code block as satisfying the following criteria:

- it must immediately follow either `{` OR `[` OR `,` OR `&` OR `)` OR `(` OR `$`;

<sup>7</sup>You may like to verify this by using the `-tt` option and checking `indent.log`!



- then at least one set of curly braces or square brackets (comments and line breaks allowed throughout).

See the `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets`: follow field of the fine tuning section in Listing 510 on page 125

N: 2019-07-13

An example is shown in Listing 251 with default output give in Listing 252.

LISTING 251: `psforeach1.tex`

```
\psforeach{\row}{%
{
{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
}
```

LISTING 252: `psforeach1.tex` default output

```
\psforeach{\row}{%
—{
———{3,2.8,2.7,3,3.1}},%
—{2.8,1,1.2,2,3},%
}
```

Referencing Listing 252, there are *three* sets of unnamed braces. Note also that the maximum value of indentation is three tabs, and these come from:

- the `\psforeach` command's mandatory argument;
- the *first* un-named braces mandatory argument;
- the *first* un-named braces *body*, which we define as any lines following the first opening `{` or `[` that defined the code block. This is the part controlled by the *body* field for `noAdditionalIndent` and friends from page 50.

Users wishing to customise the mandatory and/or optional arguments on a *per-name* basis for the `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` should use `always-un-named`.

#### 5.8.7.4 filecontents

code blocks behave just as environments, except that neither arguments nor items are sought.

#### 5.8.8 Summary

Having considered all of the different types of code blocks, the functions of the fields given in Listings 253 and 254 should now make sense.

LISTING 253: `noAdditionalIndentGlobal`

```
334 noAdditionalIndentGlobal:
335   environments: 0
336   commands: 1
337   optionalArguments: 0
338   mandatoryArguments: 0
339   ifElseFi: 0
340   items: 0
341   keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: 0
342   namedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
343   UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
344   specialBeginEnd: 0
345   afterHeading: 0
346   filecontents: 0
```

LISTING 254: `indentRulesGlobal`

```
350 indentRulesGlobal:
351   environments: 0
352   commands: 0
353   optionalArguments: 0
354   mandatoryArguments: 0
355   ifElseFi: 0
356   items: 0
357   keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets: 0
358   namedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
359   UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets: 0
360   specialBeginEnd: 0
361   afterHeading: 0
362   filecontents: 0
```

## 5.9 Commands and the strings between their arguments

The command code blocks will always look for optional (square bracketed) and mandatory (curly braced) arguments which can contain comments, line breaks and 'beamer' commands `<.*?>` between them. There are switches that can allow them to contain other strings, which we discuss next.

`commandCodeBlocks`: *<fields>*

U: 2018-04-27

The `commandCodeBlocks` field contains a few switches detailed in Listing 255.

LISTING 255: `commandCodeBlocks`

```

365 commandCodeBlocks:
366   roundParenthesesAllowed: 1
367   stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
368     -
369     amalgamate: 1
370     - 'node'
371     - 'at'
372     - 'to'
373     - 'decoration'
374     - '\+\+'
375     - '\-\-'
376     - '\#\#\d'
377   commandNameSpecial:
378     -
379     amalgamate: 1
380     - '@ifnextchar\['
```

`roundParenthesesAllowed: 0|1`

The need for this field was mostly motivated by commands found in code used to generate images in PSTricks and tikz; for example, let's consider the code given in Listing 256.

LISTING 256: `pstricks1.tex`

```

\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
{(2+cos(u))*cos(v+\Pi)}
{(2+cos(u))*sin(v+\Pi)}
{sin(u)}
```

LISTING 257: `pstricks1` default output

```

\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
{(2+cos(u))*cos(v+\Pi)}
{(2+cos(u))*sin(v+\Pi)}
{sin(u)}
```

Notice that the `\defFunction` command has an optional argument, followed by a mandatory argument, followed by a round-parenthesis argument,  $(u, v)$ .

By default, because `roundParenthesesAllowed` is set to 1 in Listing 255, then `latexindent.pl` will allow round parenthesis between optional and mandatory arguments. In the case of the code in Listing 256, `latexindent.pl` finds *all* the arguments of `\defFunction`, both before and after  $(u, v)$ .

The default output from running `latexindent.pl` on Listing 256 actually leaves it unchanged (see Listing 257); note in particular, this is because of `noAdditionalIndentGlobal` as discussed on page 59.

Upon using the YAML settings in Listing 259, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl pstricks1.tex -l noRoundParentheses.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 258.

LISTING 258: `pstricks1.tex` using Listing 259

```

\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
{(2+cos(u))*cos(v+\Pi)}
  {(2+cos(u))*sin(v+\Pi)}
  {sin(u)}
```

LISTING 259:  
`noRoundParentheses.yaml`

```

commandCodeBlocks:
  roundParenthesesAllowed: 0
```

Notice the difference between Listing 257 and Listing 258; in particular, in Listing 258, because round parentheses are *not* allowed, `latexindent.pl` finds that the `\defFunction` command finishes at the first opening round parenthesis. As such, the remaining braced, mandatory, arguments are found to be `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` (see Table 2 on page 49) which, by default, assume indentation for their body, and hence the tabbed indentation in Listing 258.

Let's explore this using the YAML given in Listing 261 and run the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl pstricks1.tex -l defFunction.yaml
```

then the output is as in Listing 260.

LISTING 260: pstricks1.tex using Listing 261

```
\defFunction[algebraic]{torus}(u,v)
  \{(2+\cos(u))*\cos(v+\Pi)\}
  \{(2+\cos(u))*\sin(v+\Pi)\}
  \{\sin(u)\}
```

LISTING 261: defFunction.yaml

```
indentRules:
  defFunction:
    body: " "
```

Notice in Listing 260 that the *body* of the `defFunction` command i.e, the subsequent lines containing arguments after the command name, have received the single space of indentation specified by Listing 261.

`stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:`  $\langle fields \rangle$

`tikz` users may well specify code such as that given in Listing 262; processing this code using `latexindent.pl` gives the default output in Listing 263.

LISTING 262: tikz-node1.tex

```
\draw[thin]
(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
++(0,-0.5cm)
node[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

LISTING 263: tikz-node1 default output

```
\draw[thin]
(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
++(0,-0.5cm)
node[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

With reference to Listing 255 on the previous page, we see that the strings

to, node, ++

are all allowed to appear between arguments; importantly, you are encouraged to add further names to this field as necessary. This means that when `latexindent.pl` processes Listing 262, it consumes:

- the optional argument `[thin]`
- the round-bracketed argument `(c)` because `roundParenthesesAllowed` is 1 by default
- the string `to` (specified in `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`)
- the optional argument `[in=110,out=-90]`
- the string `++` (specified in `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`)
- the round-bracketed argument `(0,-0.5cm)` because `roundParenthesesAllowed` is 1 by default
- the string `node` (specified in `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`)
- the optional argument `[below,align=left,scale=0.5]`

We can explore this further, for example using Listing 265 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tikz-node1.tex -l draw.yaml
```

we receive the output given in Listing 264.



LISTING 264: tikz-node1.tex using Listing 265

```
\draw[thin]
  \c(c)\to[in=110,out=-90]
  \c++(0,-0.5cm)
  \cnode[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

Notice that each line after the `\draw` command (its ‘body’) in Listing 264 has been given the appropriate two-spaces worth of indentation specified in Listing 265.

Let’s compare this with the output from using the YAML settings in Listing 267, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl tikz-node1.tex -l no-strings.yaml
```

given in Listing 266.

LISTING 266: tikz-node1.tex using Listing 267

```
\draw[thin]
(c) to[in=110,out=-90]
++(0,-0.5cm)
node[below,align=left,scale=0.5]
```

LISTING 267: no-strings.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    0
```

In this case, `latexindent.pl` sees that:

- the `\draw` command finishes after the `(c)`, as `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments` has been set to 0 so there are no strings allowed between arguments;
- it finds a `namedGroupingBracesBrackets` called `to` (see Table 2 on page 49) *with* argument `[in=110,out=-90]`
- it finds another `namedGroupingBracesBrackets` but this time called `node` with argument `[below,align=left,scale=0.5]`

U: 2018-04-27

Referencing Listing 255 on page 67, we see that the first field in the `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments` is `amalgamate` and is set to 1 by default. This is for users who wish to specify their settings in multiple YAML files. For example, by using the settings in either Listing 268 or Listing 269 is equivalent to using the settings in Listing 270.

LISTING 268: amalgamate-demo.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    - 'more'
    - 'strings'
    - 'here'
```

LISTING 269: amalgamate-demo1.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 1
    - 'more'
    - 'strings'
    - 'here'
```

LISTING 270: amalgamate-demo2.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:

  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 1
    - 'node'
    - 'at'
    - 'to'
    - 'decoration'
    - '\+\+'
    - '\-\-'
    - 'more'
    - 'strings'
    - 'here'
```

We specify `amalgamate` to be set to 0 and in which case any settings loaded prior to those specified, including the default, will be overwritten. For example, using the settings in Listing 271 means that only the strings specified in that field will be used.



LISTING 271: amalgamate-demo3.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:
  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 0
    - 'further'
    - 'settings'
```

It is important to note that the `amalgamate` field, if used, must be in the first field, and specified using the syntax given in Listings 269 to 271.

We may explore this feature further with the code in Listing 272, whose default output is given in Listing 273.

LISTING 272: for-each.tex

```
\foreach \x/\y in {0/1,1/2}{
  body of foreach
}
```

LISTING 273: for-each default output

```
\foreach \x/\y in {0/1,1/2}{
  body of foreach
}
```

Let's compare this with the output from using the YAML settings in Listing 275, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl for-each.tex -l foreach.yaml
```

given in Listing 274.

LISTING 274: for-each.tex using  
Listing 275

```
\foreach \x/\y in {0/1,1/2}{
  body of foreach
}
```

LISTING 275: foreach.yaml

```
commandCodeBlocks:
  stringsAllowedBetweenArguments:
    -
      amalgamate: 0
    - '\\x\\/\\y'
    - 'in'
```

You might like to compare the output given in Listing 273 and Listing 274. Note, in particular, in Listing 273 that the `foreach` command has not included any of the subsequent strings, and that the braces have been treated as a `namedGroupingBracesBrackets`. In Listing 274 the `foreach` command has been allowed to have `\x/\y` and `in` between arguments because of the settings given in Listing 275.

```
commandNameSpecial: <fields>
```

U: 2018-04-27

There are some special command names that do not fit within the names recognised by `latexindent.pl`, the first one of which is `\@ifnextchar[`. From the perspective of `latexindent.pl`, the whole of the text `\@ifnextchar[` is a command, because it is immediately followed by sets of mandatory arguments. However, without the `commandNameSpecial` field, `latexindent.pl` would not be able to label it as such, because the `[` is, necessarily, not matched by a closing `]`.

For example, consider the sample file in Listing 276, which has default output in Listing 277.

LISTING 276: ifnextchar.tex

```
\parbox{
  \@ifnextchar[{arg 1}{arg 2}
}
```

LISTING 277: ifnextchar.tex default  
output

```
\parbox{
  \@ifnextchar[{arg 1}{arg 2}
}
```

Notice that in Listing 277 the `parbox` command has been able to indent its body, because `latexindent.pl` has successfully found the command `\@ifnextchar` first; the pattern-matching of `latexindent.pl` starts from *the inner most <thing> and works outwards*, discussed in more detail on page 107.



For demonstration, we can compare this output with that given in Listing 278 in which the settings from Listing 279 have dictated that no special command names, including the `\@ifnextchar[` command, should not be searched for specially; as such, the `parbox` command has been *unable* to indent its body successfully, because the `\@ifnextchar[` command has not been found.

LISTING 278: `ifnextchar.tex` using  
Listing 279

```
\parbox{  
\@ifnextchar[{arg 1}{arg 2}  
}
```

LISTING 279: `no-ifnextchar.yaml`

```
commandCodeBlocks:  
  commandNameSpecial: 0
```

The `amalgamate` field can be used for `commandNameSpecial`, just as for `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments`. The same condition holds as stated previously, which we state again here:



#### Warning!

It is important to note that the `amalgamate` field, if used, in either `commandNameSpecial` or `stringsAllowedBetweenArguments` must be in the first field, and specified using the syntax given in Listings 269 to 271.

## SECTION 6



# The -m (modifylinebreaks) switch

All features described in this section will only be relevant if the `-m` switch is used.

6.1	Text Wrapping	73
6.1.1	Text wrap: overview	74
6.1.2	Text wrap: simple examples	75
6.1.3	Text wrap: <code>blocksFollow</code> examples	76
6.1.4	Text wrap: <code>blocksBeginWith</code> examples	80
6.1.5	Text wrap: <code>blocksEndBefore</code> examples	81
6.1.6	Text wrap: huge, tabstop and separator	82
6.2	<code>oneSentencePerLine</code> : modifying line breaks for sentences	84
6.2.1	<code>sentencesFollow</code>	86
6.2.2	<code>sentencesBeginWith</code>	87
6.2.3	<code>sentencesEndWith</code>	87
6.2.4	Features of the <code>oneSentencePerLine</code> routine	89
6.2.5	Text wrapping and indenting sentences	90
6.3	Poly-switches	92
6.3.1	Poly-switches for environments	93
6.3.1.1	Adding line breaks: <code>BeginStartsOnOwnLine</code> and <code>BodyStartsOnOwnLine</code>	93
6.3.1.2	Adding line breaks using <code>EndStartsOnOwnLine</code> and <code>EndFinishesWithLineBreak</code>	95
6.3.1.3	poly-switches 1, 2, and 3 only add line breaks when necessary	96
6.3.1.4	Removing line breaks (poly-switches set to <code>-1</code> )	97
6.3.1.5	About trailing horizontal space	98
6.3.1.6	poly-switch line break removal and blank lines	99
6.3.2	Poly-switches for double back slash	100
6.3.2.1	Double back slash starts on own line	100
6.3.2.2	Double back slash finishes with line break	101
6.3.2.3	Double back slash poly-switches for <code>specialBeginEnd</code>	102
6.3.2.4	Double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments	102
6.3.2.5	Double back slash optional square brackets	103
6.3.3	Poly-switches for other code blocks	103
6.3.4	Partnering <code>BodyStartsOnOwnLine</code> with argument-based poly-switches	105
6.3.5	Conflicting poly-switches: sequential code blocks	106





### 6.3.6 Conflicting poly-switches: nested code blocks . . . . . 107

`modifylinebreaks: {fields}`

As of Version 3.0, `latexindent.pl` has the `-m` switch, which permits `latexindent.pl` to modify line breaks, according to the specifications in the `modifyLineBreaks` field. *The settings in this field will only be considered if the `-m` switch has been used.* A snippet of the default settings of this field is shown in Listing 280.

LISTING 280: `modifyLineBreaks`

```
495 modifyLineBreaks:
496     preserveBlankLines: 1
497     condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto: 1
```

Having read the previous paragraph, it should sound reasonable that, if you call `latexindent.pl` using the `-m` switch, then you give it permission to modify line breaks in your file, but let's be clear:



#### Warning!

If you call `latexindent.pl` with the `-m` switch, then you are giving it permission to modify line breaks. By default, the only thing that will happen is that multiple blank lines will be condensed into one blank line; many other settings are possible, discussed next.

`preserveBlankLines: 0|1`

This field is directly related to *poly-switches*, discussed in Section 6.3. By default, it is set to 1, which means that blank lines will be *protected* from removal; however, regardless of this setting, multiple blank lines can be condensed if `condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto` is greater than 0, discussed next.

`condenseMultipleBlankLinesInto: {positive integer}`

Assuming that this switch takes an integer value greater than 0, `latexindent.pl` will condense multiple blank lines into the number of blank lines illustrated by this switch. As an example, Listing 281 shows a sample file with blank lines; upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -m -o+=-mod1
```

the output is shown in Listing 282; note that the multiple blank lines have been condensed into one blank line, and note also that we have used the `-m` switch!

LISTING 281: `mlb1.tex`

before blank line

after blank line

after blank line

LISTING 282: `mlb1-mod1.tex`

before blank line

after blank line

after blank line

## 6.1 Text Wrapping

*The text wrapping routine has been over-hauled as of V3.16; I hope that the interface is simpler, and most importantly, the results are better.*



The complete settings for this feature are given in Listing 283.

LISTING 283: textWrapOptions -m

```

523 textWrapOptions:
524     columns: 0
525     multipleSpacesToSingle: 1
526     removeBlockLineBreaks: 1
527     blocksFollow:
528         headings: 1
529         commentOnPreviousLine: 1
530         par: 1
531         blankLine: 1
532         verbatim: 1
533         filecontents: 1
534         other: '\\\\|\\\\item(?:\\h\\[\\]|' # regex
535     blocksBeginWith:
536         A-Z: 1
537         a-z: 1
538         0-9: 0
539         other: 0 # regex
540     blocksEndBefore:
541         commentOnOwnLine: 1
542         verbatim: 1
543         filecontents: 1
544         other: '\\\\begin\\{|\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\end\\{' # regex
545     huge: overflow # forbid mid-word line breaks
546     separator: ""

```

### 6.1.1 Text wrap: overview

An overview of how the text wrapping feature works:

1. the default value of `columns` is 0, which means that text wrapping will *not* happen by default;
2. it happens *after* verbatim blocks have been found;
3. it happens *after* the `oneSentencePerLine` routine (see Section 6.2);
4. it happens *before* all of the other code blocks are found and does *not* operate on a per-code-block basis; this means that, including indentation, you may receive a column width wider than that which you specify in `columns`
5. code blocks to be text wrapped will:
  - (a) *follow* the fields specified in `blocksFollow`
  - (b) *begin* with the fields specified in `blocksBeginWith`
  - (c) *end* before the fields specified in `blocksEndBefore`
6. setting `columns` to a value  $> 0$  will text wrap blocks by first removing line breaks, and then wrapping according to the specified value of `columns`;
7. setting `columns` to  $-1$  will *only* remove line breaks within the text wrap block;
8. by default, the text wrapping routine will remove line breaks within text blocks because `removeBlockLineBreaks` is set to 1; switch it to 0 if you wish to change this.

We demonstrate this feature using a series of examples.



### 6.1.2 Text wrap: simple examples

**Example 8** Let's use the sample text given in Listing 284.

LISTING 284: textwrap1.tex

```
Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
```

We will change the value of columns in Listing 286 and then run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml textwrap1.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 285.

LISTING 285: textwrap1-mod1.tex

```
Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.

Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.
```

LISTING 286: textwrap1.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 20
```

**Example 9** If we set columns to `-1` then `latexindent.pl` remove line breaks within the text wrap block, and will *not* perform text wrapping. We can use this to undo text wrapping.

Starting from the file in Listing 285 and using the settings in Listing 287

LISTING 287: textwrap1A.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: -1
```

and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1A.yaml textwrap1-mod1.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 288.

LISTING 288: textwrap1-mod1A.tex

```
Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by latexindent.pl.

Here is a line of text that will be wrapped by latexindent.pl.
```

**Example 10** By default, the text wrapping routine will convert multiple spaces into single spaces. You can change this behaviour by flicking the switch `multipleSpacesToSingle` which we have done in Listing 289

Using the settings in Listing 289 and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1B.yaml textwrap1-mod1.tex
```



gives the output in Listing 290.

LISTING 289: textwrap1B.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 20
    multipleSpacesToSingle: 0
```

LISTING 290: textwrap1-mod1B.tex

```
Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.

Here is a line of
text that will be
wrapped by
latexindent.pl.
```

We note that in Listing 290 the multiple spaces have *not* been condensed into single spaces.

### 6.1.3 Text wrap: blocksFollow examples

We examine the blocksFollow field of Listing 283.

**Example 11** Let's use the sample text given in Listing 291.

LISTING 291: tw-headings1.tex

```
\section{my heading}\label{mylabel1}
text to
  be
  wrapped from the first section
\subsection{subheading}
text to
  be
  wrapped from the first section
```

We note that Listing 291 contains the heading commands `section` and `subsection`. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml tw-headings1.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 292.

LISTING 292: tw-headings1-mod1.tex

```
\section{my heading}\label{mylabel1}
text to be wrapped
from the first
section
\subsection{subheading}
text to be wrapped
from the first
section
```

We reference Listing 283 on page 74 and also Listing 148 on page 47:

- in Listing 283 the `headings` field is set to 1, which instructs `latexindent.pl` to read the fields from Listing 148 on page 47, *regardless of the value of `indentAfterThisHeading` or `level`*;
- the default is to assume that the heading command can, optionally, be followed by a `label` command.

If you find scenarios in which the default value of `headings` does not work, then you can explore the other field.



We can turn off headings as in Listing 293 and then run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml,bf-no-headings.yaml tw-headings1.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 294, in which text wrapping has been instructed *not to happen* following headings.

LISTING 293: bf-no-headings.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksFollow:
      headings: 0
```

LISTING 294: tw-headings1-mod2.tex

```
\section{my heading}\label{mylabel1}
text to
be
wrapped from the first section
\subsection{subheading}
text to
be
wrapped from the first section
```

**Example 12** Let's use the sample text given in Listing 295.

LISTING 295: tw-comments1.tex

```
% trailing comment
text to
  be
  wrapped following first comment
% another comment
text to
  be
  wrapped following second comment
```

We note that Listing 295 contains trailing comments. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml tw-comments1.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 296.

LISTING 296: tw-comments1-mod1.tex

```
% trailing comment
text to be wrapped
following first
comment
% another comment
text to be wrapped
following second
comment
```

With reference to Listing 283 on page 74 the `commentOnPreviousLine` field is set to 1, which instructs `latexindent.pl` to find text wrap blocks after a comment on its own line.

We can turn off comments as in Listing 297 and then run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml,bf-no-comments.yaml tw-comments1.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 298, in which text wrapping has been instructed *not to happen* following comments on their own line.



LISTING 297: bf-no-comments.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksFollow:
      commentOnPreviousLine: 0
```

LISTING 298: tw-comments1-mod2.tex

```
% trailing comment
text to
be
wrapped following first comment
% another comment
text to
be
wrapped following second comment
```

Referencing Listing 283 on page 74 the `blocksFollow` fields `par`, `blankline`, `verbatim` and `filecontents` fields operate in analogous ways to those demonstrated in the above.

The other field of the `blocksFollow` can either be 0 (turned off) or set as a regular expression. The default value is set to `\\|\\item(?:\\h|\\[)` which can be translated to *backslash followed by a square bracket or backslash item followed by horizontal space or a square bracket*, or in other words, *end of display math* or an `item` command.

**Example 13** Let's use the sample text given in Listing 299.

LISTING 299: tw-disp-math1.tex

```
text to
  be
  wrapped before display math
  \[ y = x\]
text to
  be
  wrapped after display math
```

We note that Listing 299 contains display math. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml tw-disp-math1.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 300.

LISTING 300: tw-disp-math1-mod1.tex

```
text to be wrapped
before display math
\[ y = x\]
text to be wrapped
after display math
```

With reference to Listing 283 on page 74 the other field is set to `\\|`, which instructs `latexindent.pl` to find text wrap blocks after the end of display math.

We can turn off this switch as in Listing 301 and then run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml,bf-no-disp-math.yaml tw-disp-math1.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 302, in which text wrapping has been instructed *not to happen* following display math.



LISTING 301:

bf-no-disp-math.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksFollow:
      other: 0
```

LISTING 302:

tw-disp-math1-mod2.tex

```
text to be wrapped
before display math
\[ y = x\]
text to
be
wrapped after display math
```

Naturally, you should feel encouraged to customise this as you see fit.

The `blocksFollow` field *deliberately* does not default to allowing text wrapping to occur after `begin` environment statements. You are encouraged to customize the other field to accommodate the environments that you would like to text wrap individually, as in the next example.

**Example 14** Let's use the sample text given in Listing 303.

LISTING 303: tw-bf-myenv1.tex

```
text to
  be
  wrapped before myenv environment
\begin{myenv}
text to
  be
  wrapped within myenv environment
\end{myenv}
text to
  be
  wrapped after myenv environment
```

We note that Listing 303 contains `myenv` environment. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml tw-bf-myenv1.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 304.

LISTING 304: tw-bf-myenv1-mod1.tex

```
text to be wrapped
before myenv
environment
\begin{myenv}
  text to
  be
  wrapped within myenv environment
\end{myenv}
text to
be
wrapped after myenv environment
```

We note that we have *not* received much text wrapping. We can turn do better by employing Listing 305 and then run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml,tw-bf-myenv.yaml tw-bf-myenv1.tex
```

which gives the output in Listing 306, in which text wrapping has been implemented across the file.



LISTING 305: tw-bf-myenv.yaml

-m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksFollow:
      other: |-
        (?x)
        \\]
        |
        \\item(?:\h|\[)
        |
        \\begin\{myenv\} # <--- new bit
        |               # <--- new bit
        \\end\{myenv\}  # <--- new bit

```

LISTING 306: tw-bf-myenv1-mod2.tex

```

text to be wrapped
before myenv
environment
\begin{myenv}
  text to be wrapped
  within myenv
  environment
\end{myenv}
text to be wrapped
after myenv
environment

```

#### 6.1.4 Text wrap: blocksBeginWith examples

We examine the `blocksBeginWith` field of Listing 283 with a series of examples.

**Example 15** By default, text wrap blocks can begin with the characters a-z and A-Z.

If we start with the file given in Listing 307

LISTING 307: tw-0-9.tex

```

123 text to
   be
   wrapped before display math
\[\ y = x\]
456 text to
   be
   wrapped after display math

```

and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml tw-0-9.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 308 in which text wrapping has *not* occurred.

LISTING 308: tw-0-9-mod1.tex

```

123 text to
be
wrapped before display math
\[\ y = x\]
456 text to
be
wrapped after display math

```

We can allow paragraphs to begin with 0-9 characters by using the settings in Listing 309 and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml,bb-0-9.yaml tw-0-9.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 310, in which text wrapping *has* happened.





LISTING 309: bb-0-9.yaml.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksBeginWith:
      0-9: 1
```

LISTING 310: tw-0-9-mod2.tex

```
123 text to be
wrapped before
display math
\[ y = x\]
456 text to be
wrapped after
display math
```

**Example 16** Let's now use the file given in Listing 311

LISTING 311: tw-bb-announce1.tex

```
% trailing comment
\announce{announce text}
and text
to be
wrapped before
goes here
```

and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml tw-bb-announce1.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 312 in which text wrapping has *not* occurred.

LISTING 312: tw-bb-announce1-mod1.tex

```
% trailing comment
\announce{announce text}
and text
to be
wrapped before
goes here
```

We can allow `\announce` to be at the beginning of paragraphs by using the settings in Listing 313 and running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1.yaml,tw-bb-announce.yaml tw-bb-announce1.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 314, in which text wrapping *has* happened.

LISTING 313: tw-bb-announce.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksBeginWith:
      other: '\announce'
```

LISTING 314:  
tw-bb-announce1-mod2.tex

```
% trailing comment
\announce{announce
text} and text to
be wrapped before
goes here
```

### 6.1.5 Text wrap: `blocksEndBefore` examples

We examine the `blocksEndBefore` field of Listing 283 with a series of examples.

**Example 17** Let's use the sample text given in Listing 315.



LISTING 315: tw-be-equation.tex

```
before
equation
text
\begin{align}
  1 & 2 \\\
  3 & 4
\end{align}
after
equation
text
```

We note that Listing 315 contains an environment. Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1A.yaml tw-be-equation.tex
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 316.

LISTING 316: tw-be-equation-mod1.tex

```
before equation text
\begin{align}
  1 & 2 \\\
  3 & 4
\end{align}
after
equation
text
```

With reference to Listing 283 on page 74 the other field is set to `\\begin\{|\|\\[|\|\\end\{`, which instructs `latexindent.pl` to *stop* text wrap blocks before begin statements, display math, and end statements.

We can turn off this switch as in Listing 317 and then run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l textwrap1A.yaml,tw-be-equation.yaml tw-be-equation.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 318, in which text wrapping has been instructed *not* to stop at these statements.

LISTING 317: tw-be-equation.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    blocksEndBefore:
      other: 0
```

LISTING 318: tw-be-equation-mod2.tex

```
before equation text \begin{align} 1 & 2 \\\ 3 & 4 \end{align} after equation text
```

Naturally, you should feel encouraged to customise this as you see fit.

### 6.1.6 Text wrap: huge, tabstop and separator

The default value of `huge` is `overflow`, which means that words will *not* be broken by the text wrapping routine, implemented by the `Text::Wrap` [39]. There are options to change the `huge` option for the `Text::Wrap` module to either `wrap` or `die`. Before modifying the value of `huge`, please bear in mind the following warning:

U: 2021-07-23

**Warning!**

Changing the value of `huge` to anything other than `overflow` will slow down `latexindent.pl` significantly when the `-m` switch is active.

Furthermore, changing `huge` means that you may have some words or *commands*(!) split across lines in your `.tex` file, which may affect your output. I do not recommend changing this field.

For example, using the settings in Listings 320 and 322 and running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap4.tex -o=+-mod2A -l textwrap2A.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap4.tex -o=+-mod2B -l textwrap2B.yaml
```

gives the respective output in Listings 319 and 321.

LISTING 319: textwrap4-mod2A.tex

```
He
re
is
a
li
ne
of
te
xt
.
```

LISTING 321: textwrap4-mod2B.tex

```
Here
is
a
line
of
text.
```

LISTING 320: textwrap2A.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 3
    huge: wrap
```

LISTING 322: textwrap2B.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 3
```

N: 2020-11-06

You can also specify the `tabstop` field as an integer value, which is passed to the text wrap module; see [39] for details. Starting with the code in Listing 323 with settings in Listing 324, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m textwrap-ts.tex -o=+-mod1 -l tabstop.yaml
cmh:~$
```

gives the code given in Listing 325.

LISTING 323: textwrap-ts.tex

```
x      y
```

LISTING 324: tabstop.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 80
    tabstop: 9
    multipleSpacesToSingle: 0
```

LISTING 325: textwrap-ts-mod1.tex

```
x      y
```

You can specify `separator`, `break` and `unexpand` options in your settings in analogous ways to those demonstrated in Listings 322 and 324, and they will be passed to the `Text::Wrap` module. I have not found a useful reason to do this; see [39] for more details.



## 6.2 oneSentencePerLine: modifying line breaks for sentences

N: 2018-01-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to format your file so that it puts one sentence per line. Thank you to [7] for helping to shape and test this feature. The behaviour of this part of the script is controlled by the switches detailed in Listing 326, all of which we discuss next.

LISTING 326: oneSentencePerLine

```

498 oneSentencePerLine:
499     manipulateSentences: 0
500     removeSentenceLineBreaks: 1
501     multipleSpacesToSingle: 1
502     textWrapSentences: 0 # setting to 1 disables main textWrap
    routine
503     sentenceIndent: ""
504     sentencesFollow:
505         par: 1
506         blankLine: 1
507         fullStop: 1
508         exclamationMark: 1
509         questionMark: 1
510         rightBrace: 1
511         commentOnPreviousLine: 1
512         other: 0
513     sentencesBeginWith:
514         A-Z: 1
515         a-z: 0
516         other: 0
517     sentencesEndWith:
518         basicFullStop: 0
519         betterFullStop: 1
520         exclamationMark: 1
521         questionMark: 1
522         other: 0

```

`manipulateSentences: 0|1`

This is a binary switch that details if `latexindent.pl` should perform the sentence manipulation routine; it is *off* (set to 0) by default, and you will need to turn it on (by setting it to 1) if you want the script to modify line breaks surrounding and within sentences.

`removeSentenceLineBreaks: 0|1`

When operating upon sentences `latexindent.pl` will, by default, remove internal line breaks as `removeSentenceLineBreaks` is set to 1. Setting this switch to 0 instructs `latexindent.pl` not to do so.

For example, consider `multiple-sentences.tex` shown in Listing 327.

LISTING 327: multiple-sentences.tex

```

This is the first
sentence. This is the; second, sentence. This is the
third sentence.

```

```

This is the fourth
sentence! This is the fifth sentence? This is the
sixth sentence.

```

If we use the YAML files in Listings 329 and 331, and run the commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 328 and 330.

LISTING 328: multiple-sentences.tex  
using Listing 329

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.
```

```
This is the fourth sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 329:  
manipulate-sentences.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
```

LISTING 330: multiple-sentences.tex  
using Listing 331

```
This is the first
sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the
third sentence.
```

```
This is the fourth
sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the
sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 331:  
keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    removeSentenceLineBreaks: 0
```

Notice, in particular, that the ‘internal’ sentence line breaks in Listing 327 have been removed in Listing 328, but have not been removed in Listing 330.

`multipleSpacesToSingle: 0|1`

U: 2022-03-25

By default, the one-sentence-per-line routine will convert multiple spaces into single spaces. You can change this behaviour by changing the switch `multipleSpacesToSingle` to a value of 0.

The remainder of the settings displayed in Listing 326 on the previous page instruct `latexindent.pl` on how to define a sentence. From the perspective of `latexindent.pl` a sentence must:

- *follow* a certain character or set of characters (see Listing 332); by default, this is either `\par`, a blank line, a full stop/period (`.`), exclamation mark (`!`), question mark (`?`) right brace (`}`) or a comment on the previous line;
- *begin* with a character type (see Listing 333); by default, this is only capital letters;
- *end* with a character (see Listing 334); by default, these are full stop/period (`.`), exclamation mark (`!`) and question mark (`?`).

In each case, you can specify the `other` field to include any pattern that you would like; you can specify anything in this field using the language of regular expressions.



LISTING 332: sentencesFollow

-m

```

504 sentencesFollow:
505     par: 1
506     blankLine: 1
507     fullStop: 1
508     exclamationMark: 1
509     questionMark: 1
510     rightBrace: 1
511
512 commentOnPreviousLine: 1
    other: 0

```

LISTING 333: sentencesBeginWith

-m

```

513 sentencesBeginWith:
514     A-Z: 1
515     a-z: 0
516     other: 0

```

LISTING 334: sentencesEndWith

-m

```

517 sentencesEndWith:
518     basicFullStop: 0
519     betterFullStop: 1
520     exclamationMark: 1
521     questionMark: 1
522     other: 0

```

### 6.2.1 sentencesFollow

Let's explore a few of the switches in `sentencesFollow`; let's start with Listing 327 on page 84, and use the YAML settings given in Listing 336. Using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=sentences-follow1.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 335.

LISTING 335: multiple-sentences.tex using Listing 336

```

This is the first sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.

This is the fourth
sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.

```

LISTING 336: sentences-follow1.yaml

-m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesFollow:
      blankLine: 0

```

Notice that, because `blankLine` is set to 0, `latexindent.pl` will not seek sentences following a blank line, and so the fourth sentence has not been accounted for.

We can explore the other field in Listing 332 with the `.tex` file detailed in Listing 337.

LISTING 337: multiple-sentences1.tex

```

(Some sentences stand alone in brackets.) This is the first
sentence. This is the; second, sentence. This is the
third sentence.

```

Upon running the following commands

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences1 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences1 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml,sentences-follow2.yaml

```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 338 and 339.

LISTING 338: multiple-sentences1.tex using Listing 329 on the previous page

```

(Some sentences stand alone in brackets.) This is the first
sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.

```



LISTING 339: multiple-sentences1.tex using Listing 340

```
(Some sentences stand alone in brackets.)
This is the first sentence.
This is the; second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.
```

LISTING 340: sentences-follow2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesFollow:
      other: "\\)"
```

Notice that in Listing 338 the first sentence after the ) has not been accounted for, but that following the inclusion of Listing 340, the output given in Listing 339 demonstrates that the sentence *has* been accounted for correctly.

### 6.2.2 sentencesBeginWith

By default, `latexindent.pl` will only assume that sentences begin with the upper case letters A-Z; you can instruct the script to define sentences to begin with lower case letters (see Listing 333), and we can use the other field to define sentences to begin with other characters.

LISTING 341: multiple-sentences2.tex

```
This is the first
sentence.

$a$ can
represent a
number. 7 is
at the beginning of this sentence.
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences2 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences2 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml,sentences-begin1.yaml
```

then we obtain the respective output given in Listings 342 and 343.

LISTING 342: multiple-sentences2.tex using Listing 329 on page 85

```
This is the first sentence.

$a$ can
represent a
number. 7 is
at the beginning of this sentence.
```

LISTING 343: multiple-sentences2.tex using Listing 344

```
This is the first sentence.

$a$ can represent a number.
7 is at the beginning of this sentence.
```

LISTING 344: sentences-begin1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesBeginWith:
      other: "\\$|[0-9]"
```

Notice that in Listing 342, the first sentence has been accounted for but that the subsequent sentences have not. In Listing 343, all of the sentences have been accounted for, because the other field in Listing 344 has defined sentences to begin with either \$ or any numeric digit, 0 to 9.

### 6.2.3 sentencesEndWith

Let's return to Listing 327 on page 84; we have already seen the default way in which `latexindent.pl` will operate on the sentences in this file in Listing 328 on page 85. We can populate the other field



with any character that we wish; for example, using the YAML specified in Listing 346 and the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=sentences-end1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences -m -l=sentences-end2.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listing 345.

LISTING 345: multiple-sentences.tex using Listing 346

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the;
second, sentence.
This is the third sentence.

This is the fourth sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 346: sentences-end1.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      other: "\:|\;|\,\"
```

LISTING 347: multiple-sentences.tex using Listing 348

```
This is the first sentence.
This is the;
second,
sentence.
This is the third sentence.

This is the fourth sentence!
This is the fifth sentence?
This is the sixth sentence.
```

LISTING 348: sentences-end2.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      other: "\:|\;|\,\"
    sentencesBeginWith:
      a-z: 1
```

There is a subtle difference between the output in Listings 345 and 347; in particular, in Listing 345 the word `sentence` has not been defined as a sentence, because we have not instructed `latexindent.pl` to begin sentences with lower case letters. We have changed this by using the settings in Listing 348, and the associated output in Listing 347 reflects this.

Referencing Listing 334 on page 86, you'll notice that there is a field called `basicFullStop`, which is set to 0, and that the `betterFullStop` is set to 1 by default.

Let's consider the file shown in Listing 349.

LISTING 349: url.tex

```
This sentence, \url{tex.stackexchange.com/} finishes here. Second sentence.
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl url -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 350.

LISTING 350: url.tex using Listing 329 on page 85

```
This sentence, \url{tex.stackexchange.com/} finishes here.
Second sentence.
```

Notice that the full stop within the url has been interpreted correctly. This is because, within the `betterFullStop`, full stops at the end of sentences have the following properties:

- they are ignored within e.g. and i.e.;





- they can not be immediately followed by a lower case or upper case letter;
- they can not be immediately followed by a hyphen, comma, or number.

If you find that the `betterFullStop` does not work for your purposes, then you can switch it off by setting it to 0, and you can experiment with the other field. You can also seek to customise the `betterFullStop` routine by using the *fine tuning*, detailed in Listing 510 on page 125.

The `basicFullStop` routine should probably be avoided in most situations, as it does not accommodate the specifications above. For example, using the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl url -m -l=alt-full-stop1.yaml
```

and the YAML in Listing 352 gives the output in Listing 351.

LISTING 351: `url.tex` using Listing 352

```
This sentence, \url{tex.
  stackexchange.com/} finishes here.Second sentence.
```

LISTING 352: `alt-full-stop1.yaml`

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      basicFullStop: 1
      betterFullStop: 0
```

Notice that the full stop within the URL has not been accommodated correctly because of the non-default settings in Listing 352.

#### 6.2.4 Features of the `oneSentencePerLine` routine

The sentence manipulation routine takes place *after* verbatim environments, preamble and trailing comments have been accounted for; this means that any characters within these types of code blocks will not be part of the sentence manipulation routine.

For example, if we begin with the `.tex` file in Listing 353, and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences3 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listing 354.

LISTING 353: `multiple-sentences3.tex`

```
The first sentence continues after the verbatim
\begin{verbatim}
  there are sentences within this. These
  will not be operated
  upon by latexindent.pl.
\end{verbatim}
and finishes here. Second sentence % a commented full stop.
contains trailing comments,
which are ignored.
```

LISTING 354: `multiple-sentences3.tex` using Listing 329 on page 85

```
The first sentence continues after the verbatim \begin{verbatim}
  there are sentences within this. These
  will not be operated
  upon by latexindent.pl.
\end{verbatim} and finishes here.
Second sentence contains trailing comments, which are ignored.
% a commented full stop.
```

Furthermore, if sentences run across environments then, by default, the line breaks internal to the sentence will be removed. For example, if we use the `.tex` file in Listing 355 and run the commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences4 -m -l=manipulate-sentences.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences4 -m -l=keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml
```

then we obtain the output in Listings 356 and 357.

LISTING 355: multiple-sentences4.tex

```
This sentence
\begin{itemize}
  \item continues
\end{itemize}
across itemize
and finishes here.
```

LISTING 356: multiple-sentences4.tex using Listing 329 on page 85

```
This sentence \begin{itemize} \item continues \end{itemize} across itemize and finishes here.
```

LISTING 357: multiple-sentences4.tex using Listing 331 on page 85

```
This sentence
\begin{itemize}
  \item continues
\end{itemize}
across itemize
and finishes here.
```

Once you’ve read Section 6.3, you will know that you can accommodate the removal of internal sentence line breaks by using the YAML in Listing 359 and the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences4 -m -l=item-rules2.yaml
```

the output of which is shown in Listing 358.

LISTING 358: multiple-sentences4.tex  
using Listing 359

```
This sentence
\begin{itemize}
  \item continues
\end{itemize}
across itemize and finishes here.
```

LISTING 359: item-rules2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
  items:
    ItemStartsOnOwnLine: 1
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

### 6.2.5 Text wrapping and indenting sentences

The oneSentencePerLine can be instructed to perform text wrapping and indentation upon sentences.

Let’s use the code in Listing 360.



LISTING 360: multiple-sentences5.tex

A distincao entre conteudo `\emph{real}` e conteudo `\emph{intencional}` esta relacionada, ainda, a distincao entre o conceito husserliano de `\emph{experiencia}` e o uso popular desse termo. No sentido comum, o `\term{experimentado}` e um complexo de eventos exteriores, e o `\term{experimentar}` consiste em percepcoes (alem de julgamentos e outros atos) nas quais tais eventos aparecem como objetos, e objetos frequentemente to the end.

Referencing Listing 362, and running the following command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences5 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml
```

we receive the output given in Listing 361.

LISTING 361: multiple-sentences5.tex using Listing 362

A distincao entre conteudo `\emph{real}` e conteudo `\emph{intencional}` esta relacionada, ainda, a distincao entre o conceito husserliano de `\emph{experiencia}` e o uso popular desse termo. No sentido comum, o `\term{experimentado}` e um complexo de eventos exteriores, e o `\term{experimentar}` consiste em percepcoes (alem de julgamentos e outros atos) nas quais tais eventos aparecem como objetos, e objetos frequentemente to the end.

LISTING 362: sentence-wrap1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    removeSentenceLineBreaks: 1
    textWrapSentences: 1
    sentenceIndent: " "
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: 50
```

If you specify `textWrapSentences` as 1, but do *not* specify a value for `columns` then the text wrapping will *not* operate on sentences, and you will see a warning in `indent.log`.

The indentation of sentences requires that sentences are stored as code blocks. This means that you may need to tweak Listing 334 on page 86. Let's explore this in relation to Listing 363.

LISTING 363: multiple-sentences6.tex

Consider the following:

```
\begin{itemize}
  \item firstly.
  \item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

By default, `latexindent.pl` will find the full-stop within the first `item`, which means that, upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences6 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences6 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml
-y="modifyLineBreaks:oneSentencePerLine:sentenceIndent:''"
```

we receive the respective output in Listing 364 and Listing 365.

LISTING 364: multiple-sentences6-mod1.tex using Listing 362

Consider the following: `\begin{itemize}` `\item`  
 firstly.  
`\item` secondly.  
`\end{itemize}`



LISTING 365: multiple-sentences6-mod2.tex using Listing 362 and no sentence indentation

```
Consider the following: \begin{itemize} \item
    firstly.
    \item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

We note that Listing 364 the `itemize` code block has *not* been indented appropriately. This is because the `oneSentencePerLine` has been instructed to store sentences (because Listing 362); each sentence is then searched for code blocks.

We can tweak the settings in Listing 334 on page 86 to ensure that full stops are not followed by `item` commands, and that the end of sentences contains `\end{itemize}` as in Listing 366 (if you intend to use this, ensure that you remove the line breaks from the other field).

LISTING 366: itemize.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
    sentencesEndWith:
      betterFullStop: 0
      other: '(?:\\.\\)(?!\\h*[a-z]))|(?:(<?!(?:<e\\.g)
        |(?:i\\.e)|(?:etc))))\\.\\(?:\\h*\\R*(?:\\end\\{itemize\\})?)
        (?!(?:[a-z]|[A-Z]|\\-|\\,|[0-9]|(?:<\\R|\\h)*\\item)))'
```

Upon running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl multiple-sentences6 -m -l=sentence-wrap1.yaml,itemize.yaml
```

we receive the output in Listing 367.

LISTING 367: multiple-sentences6-mod3.tex using Listing 362 and Listing 366

```
Consider the following: \begin{itemize}
  \item
  firstly.
  \item secondly.
\end{itemize}
```

Notice that the sentence has received indentation, and that the `itemize` code block has been found and indented correctly.

Text wrapping when using the `oneSentencePerLine` routine determines if it will remove line breaks while text wrapping, from the value of `removeSentenceLineBreaks`.

### 6.3 Poly-switches

Every other field in the `modifyLineBreaks` field uses poly-switches, and can take one of the following integer values:

- −1 *remove mode*: line breaks before or after the *<part of thing>* can be removed (assuming that `preserveBlankLines` is set to 0);
- 0 *off mode*: line breaks will not be modified for the *<part of thing>* under consideration;
- 1 *add mode*: a line break will be added before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, assuming that there is not already a line break before or after the *<part of thing>*;
- 2 *comment then add mode*: a comment symbol will be added, followed by a line break before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, assuming that there is not already a comment and line break before or after the *<part of thing>*;

U: 2022-04-04

U: 2017-08-21



N: 2017-08-21

N: 2019-07-13

- 3 *add then blank line mode*: a line break will be added before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, assuming that there is not already a line break before or after the *<part of thing>*, followed by a blank line;
- 4 *add blank line mode*; a blank line will be added before or after the *<part of thing>* under consideration, even if the *<part of thing>* is already on its own line.

In the above, *<part of thing>* refers to either the *begin statement*, *body* or *end statement* of the code blocks detailed in Table 2 on page 49. All poly-switches are *off* by default; `latexindent.pl` searches first of all for per-name settings, and then followed by global per-thing settings.

### 6.3.1 Poly-switches for environments

We start by viewing a snippet of `defaultSettings.yaml` in Listing 368; note that it contains *global* settings (immediately after the `environments` field) and that *per-name* settings are also allowed – in the case of Listing 368, settings for `equation*` have been specified for demonstration. Note that all poly-switches are *off* (set to 0) by default.

LISTING 368: environments -m

```

548 environments:
549     BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 0
550     BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 0
551     EndStartsOnOwnLine: 0
552     EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 0
553 equation*:
554     BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 0
555     BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 0
556     EndStartsOnOwnLine: 0
557     EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 0

```

Let's begin with the simple example given in Listing 369; note that we have annotated key parts of the file using ♠, ♥, ♦ and ♣, these will be related to fields specified in Listing 368.

LISTING 369: env-mlb1.tex

before words ♠ `\begin{myenv}` ♥ body of myenv ♦ `\end{myenv}` ♣ after words

#### 6.3.1.1 Adding line breaks: `BeginStartsOnOwnLine` and `BodyStartsOnOwnLine`

Let's explore `BeginStartsOnOwnLine` and `BodyStartsOnOwnLine` in Listings 370 and 371, and in particular, let's allow each of them in turn to take a value of 1.

LISTING 370: env-mlb1.yaml -m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 1

```

LISTING 371: env-mlb2.yaml -m

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 1

```

After running the following commands,

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb2.yaml

```

the output is as in Listings 372 and 373 respectively.

LISTING 372: env-mlb.tex using Listing 370	LISTING 373: env-mlb.tex using Listing 371
before words <code>\begin{myenv}</code> body of myenv <code>\end{myenv}</code> after words	before words <code>\begin{myenv}</code> body of myenv <code>\end{myenv}</code> after words

There are a couple of points to note:

- in Listing 372 a line break has been added at the point denoted by ♠ in Listing 369; no other line breaks have been changed;



- in Listing 373 a line break has been added at the point denoted by ♥ in Listing 369; furthermore, note that the *body* of `myenv` has received the appropriate (default) indentation.

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 370 and 371 so that they are 2 and save them into `env-mlb3.yaml` and `env-mlb4.yaml` respectively (see Listings 374 and 375).

LISTING 374: `env-mlb3.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

LISTING 375: `env-mlb4.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 376 and 377.

LISTING 376: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 374

```
before words%
\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv} after words
```

LISTING 377: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 375

```
before words \begin{myenv}%
body of myenv\end{myenv} after words
```

Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 372 and 373, but this time a comment symbol has been added before adding the line break; in both cases, trailing horizontal space has been stripped before doing so.

N: 2017-08-21

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 370 and 371 so that they are 3 and save them into `env-mlb5.yaml` and `env-mlb6.yaml` respectively (see Listings 378 and 379).

LISTING 378: `env-mlb5.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 3
```

LISTING 379: `env-mlb6.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 3
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 380 and 381.

LISTING 380: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 378

```
before words
\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv} after words
```

LISTING 381: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 379

```
before words \begin{myenv}
body of myenv\end{myenv} after words
```

Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 372 and 373, but this time a *blank line* has been added after adding the line break.

N: 2019-07-13

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 378 and 379 so that they are 4 and save them into `env-beg4.yaml` and `env-body4.yaml` respectively (see Listings 382 and 383).

LISTING 382: `env-beg4.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 4
```

LISTING 383: `env-body4.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 4
```

We will demonstrate this poly-switch value using the code in Listing 384.

LISTING 384: `env-mlb1.tex`

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-beg4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-body4.yaml
```



then we receive the respective outputs in Listings 385 and 386.

LISTING 385: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 382

```
before words

\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 386: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 383

```
before words
\begin{myenv}

  body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

We note in particular that, by design, for this value of the poly-switches:

1. in Listing 385 a blank line has been inserted before the `\begin` statement, even though the `\begin` statement was already on its own line;
2. in Listing 386 a blank line has been inserted before the beginning of the *body*, even though it already began on its own line.

### 6.3.1.2 Adding line breaks using `EndStartsOnOwnLine` and `EndFinishesWithLineBreak`

Let's explore `EndStartsOnOwnLine` and `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` in Listings 387 and 388, and in particular, let's allow each of them in turn to take a value of 1.

LISTING 387: env-mlb7.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 1
```

LISTING 388: env-mlb8.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

After running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb7.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb.tex -l env-mlb8.yaml
```

the output is as in Listings 389 and 390.

LISTING 389: env-mlb.tex using Listing 387

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv
\end{myenv} after words
```

LISTING 390: env-mlb.tex using Listing 388

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}
after words
```

There are a couple of points to note:

- in Listing 389 a line break has been added at the point denoted by ♦ in Listing 369 on page 93; no other line breaks have been changed and the `\end{myenv}` statement has *not* received indentation (as intended);
- in Listing 390 a line break has been added at the point denoted by ♣ in Listing 369 on page 93.

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 387 and 388 so that they are 2 and save them into env-mlb9.yaml and env-mlb10.yaml respectively (see Listings 391 and 392).

LISTING 391: env-mlb9.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

LISTING 392: env-mlb10.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 393 and 394.

LISTING 393: env-mlb.tex using Listing 391

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv%
\end{myenv} after words
```

LISTING 394: env-mlb.tex using Listing 392

```
before words \begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}%
after words
```



Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 389 and 390, but this time a comment symbol has been added before adding the line break; in both cases, trailing horizontal space has been stripped before doing so.

N: 2017-08-21

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 387 and 388 so that they are 3 and save them into `env-mlb11.yaml` and `env-mlb12.yaml` respectively (see Listings 395 and 396).

LISTING 395: `env-mlb11.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 3
```

LISTING 396: `env-mlb12.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 3
```

Upon running commands analogous to the above, we obtain Listings 397 and 398.

LISTING 397: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 395

before words `\begin{myenv}`body of myenv

`\end{myenv}` after words

LISTING 398: `env-mlb.tex` using Listing 396

before words `\begin{myenv}`body of myenv`\end{myenv}`

after words

Note that line breaks have been added as in Listings 389 and 390, and that a *blank line* has been added after the line break.

N: 2019-07-13

Let's now change each of the 1 values in Listings 395 and 396 so that they are 4 and save them into `env-end4.yaml` and `env-end-f4.yaml` respectively (see Listings 399 and 400).

LISTING 399: `env-end4.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 4
```

LISTING 400: `env-end-f4.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 4
```

We will demonstrate this poly-switch value using the code from Listing 384 on page 94.

Upon running the commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-end4.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb1.tex -l env-end-f4.yaml
```

then we receive the respective outputs in Listings 401 and 402.

LISTING 401: `env-mlb1.tex` using Listing 399

before words  
`\begin{myenv}`  
 body of myenv  
  
`\end{myenv}`  
 after words

LISTING 402: `env-mlb1.tex` using Listing 400

before words  
`\begin{myenv}`  
 body of myenv  
`\end{myenv}`  
  
 after words

We note in particular that, by design, for this value of the poly-switches:

1. in Listing 401 a blank line has been inserted before the `\end` statement, even though the `\end` statement was already on its own line;
2. in Listing 402 a blank line has been inserted after the `\end` statement, even though it already began on its own line.

### 6.3.1.3 poly-switches 1, 2, and 3 only add line breaks when necessary

If you ask `latexindent.pl` to add a line break (possibly with a comment) using a poly-switch value of 1 (or 2 or 3), it will only do so if necessary. For example, if you process the file in Listing 403 on the next page using poly-switch values of 1, 2, or 3, it will be left unchanged.





LISTING 403: env-mlb2.tex

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 404: env-mlb3.tex

```
before words
\begin{myenv} %
  body of myenv%
\end{myenv}%
after words
```

Setting the poly-switches to a value of 4 instructs latexindent.pl to add a line break even if the *<part of thing>* is already on its own line; see Listings 385 and 386 and Listings 401 and 402.

In contrast, the output from processing the file in Listing 404 will vary depending on the poly-switches used; in Listing 405 you'll see that the comment symbol after the `\begin{myenv}` has been moved to the next line, as `BodyStartsOnOwnLine` is set to 1. In Listing 406 you'll see that the comment has been accounted for correctly because `BodyStartsOnOwnLine` has been set to 2, and the comment symbol has *not* been moved to its own line. You're encouraged to experiment with Listing 404 and by setting the other poly-switches considered so far to 2 in turn.

LISTING 405: env-mlb3.tex using Listing 371 on page 93

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
%
  body of myenv%
\end{myenv}%
after words
```

LISTING 406: env-mlb3.tex using Listing 375 on page 94

```
before words
\begin{myenv} %
  body of myenv%
\end{myenv}%
after words
```

The details of the discussion in this section have concerned *global* poly-switches in the `environments` field; each switch can also be specified on a *per-name* basis, which would take priority over the global values; with reference to Listing 368 on page 93, an example is shown for the `equation*` environment.

6.3.1.4 Removing line breaks (poly-switches set to -1)

Setting poly-switches to -1 tells latexindent.pl to remove line breaks of the *<part of the thing>*, if necessary. We will consider the example code given in Listing 407, noting in particular the positions of the line break highlighters, ♠, ♥, ♦ and ♣, together with the associated YAML files in Listings 408 to 411.

LISTING 407: env-mlb4.tex

```
before words♠
\begin{myenv}♥
  body of myenv♦
\end{myenv}♣
after words
```

LISTING 408: env-mlb13.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BeginStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

LISTING 409: env-mlb14.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    BodyStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

LISTING 410: env-mlb15.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

LISTING 411: env-mlb16.yaml -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
```

After running the commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb14.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb15.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb16.yaml
```

we obtain the respective output in Listings 412 to 415.

LISTING 412: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 408

```
before words\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 413: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 409

```
before words
\begin{myenv}body of myenv
\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 414: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 410

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv\end{myenv}
after words
```

LISTING 415: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 411

```
before words
\begin{myenv}
  body of myenv
\end{myenv}after words
```

Notice that in:

- Listing 412 the line break denoted by ♠ in Listing 407 has been removed;
- Listing 413 the line break denoted by ♥ in Listing 407 has been removed;
- Listing 414 the line break denoted by ♦ in Listing 407 has been removed;
- Listing 415 the line break denoted by ♣ in Listing 407 has been removed.

We examined each of these cases separately for clarity of explanation, but you can combine all of the YAML settings in Listings 408 to 411 into one file; alternatively, you could tell `latexindent.pl` to load them all by using the following command, for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb4.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 369 on page 93.

### 6.3.1.5 About trailing horizontal space

Recall that on page 30 we discussed the YAML field `removeTrailingWhitespace`, and that it has two (binary) switches to determine if horizontal space should be removed beforeProcessing and afterProcessing. The beforeProcessing is particularly relevant when considering the `-m` switch; let's consider the file shown in Listing 416, which highlights trailing spaces.

LISTING 416: env-mlb5.tex

```
before_words    ♠
\begin{myenv}   ♥
body_of_myenv   ♦
\end{myenv}     ♣
after_words
```

LISTING 417: removeTWS-before.yaml

```
removeTrailingWhitespace:
  beforeProcessing: 1
```

The output from the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb5.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb5.tex -l
env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml,removeTWS-before.yaml
```



is shown, respectively, in Listings 418 and 419; note that the trailing horizontal white space has been preserved (by default) in Listing 418, while in Listing 419, it has been removed using the switch specified in Listing 417.

LISTING 418: env-mlb5.tex using Listings 412 to 415

```
before_words\begin{myenv}body_of_myenv\end{myenv}after_words
```

LISTING 419: env-mlb5.tex using Listings 412 to 415 and Listing 417

```
before_words\begin{myenv}body_of_myenv\end{myenv}after_words
```

### 6.3.1.6 poly-switch line break removal and blank lines

Now let's consider the file in Listing 420, which contains blank lines.

LISTING 420: env-mlb6.tex

```
before words

\begin{myenv}

body of myenv

\end{myenv}

after words
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb6.tex -l env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb6.tex -l
env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,env-mlb15.yaml,env-mlb16.yaml,UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml
```

LISTING 421:

```
UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml
```

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  preserveBlankLines: 0
```

we receive the respective outputs in Listings 422 and 423. In Listing 422 we see that the multiple blank lines have each been condensed into one blank line, but that blank lines have *not* been removed by the poly-switches – this is because, by default, `preserveBlankLines` is set to 1. By contrast, in Listing 423, we have allowed the poly-switches to remove blank lines because, in Listing 421, we have set `preserveBlankLines` to 0.

LISTING 422: env-mlb6.tex using Listings 412 to 415

```
before words

\begin{myenv}

body of myenv

\end{myenv}

after words
```

LISTING 423: env-mlb6.tex using Listings 412 to 415 and Listing 421

```
before words\begin{myenv}body of myenv\end{myenv}after words
```

We can explore this further using the blank-line poly-switch value of 3; let's use the file given in Listing 424.

LISTING 424: env-mlb7.tex

```
\begin{one} one text \end{one} \begin{two} two text \end{two}
```

Upon running the following commands



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb7.tex -l env-mlb12.yaml,env-mlb13.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m env-mlb7.tex -l
env-mlb13.yaml,env-mlb14.yaml,UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml
```

we receive the outputs given in Listings 425 and 426.

LISTING 425: env-mlb7-preserve.tex

```
\begin{one} one text \end{one}

\begin{two} two text \end{two}
```

LISTING 426: env-mlb7-no-preserve.tex

```
\begin{one} one text \end{one} \begin{two} two text \end{two}
```

Notice that in:

- Listing 425 that `\end{one}` has added a blank line, because of the value of `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` in Listing 396 on page 96, and even though the line break ahead of `\begin{two}` should have been removed (because of `BeginStartsOnOwnLine` in Listing 408 on page 97), the blank line has been preserved by default;
- Listing 426, by contrast, has had the additional line-break removed, because of the settings in Listing 421.

### 6.3.2 Poly-switches for double back slash

N: 2019-07-13

With reference to `lookForAlignDelims` (see Listing 55 on page 30) you can specify poly-switches to dictate the line-break behaviour of double back slashes in environments (Listing 57 on page 31), commands (Listing 91 on page 37), or special code blocks (Listing 130 on page 43). Note that for these poly-switches to take effect, the name of the code block must necessarily be specified within `lookForAlignDelims` (Listing 55 on page 30); we will demonstrate this in what follows.

Consider the code given in Listing 427.

LISTING 427: tabular3.tex

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
1 & 2 ★\\□ 3 & 4 ★\\□
\end{tabular}
```

Referencing Listing 427:

- DBS stands for *double back slash*;
- line breaks ahead of the double back slash are annotated by ★, and are controlled by `DBSStartsOnOwnLine`;
- line breaks after the double back slash are annotated by □, and are controlled by `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak`.

Let's explore each of these in turn.

#### 6.3.2.1 Double back slash starts on own line

We explore `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` (★ in Listing 427); starting with the code in Listing 427, together with the YAML files given in Listing 429 and Listing 431 and running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS1.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS2.yaml
```

then we receive the respective output given in Listing 428 and Listing 430.



LISTING 428: tabular3.tex using  
Listing 429

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 \\
  \\ 3 & 4 \\
  \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 429: DBS1.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 1
```

LISTING 430: tabular3.tex using  
Listing 431

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 % \\
  \\ 3 & 4% \\
  \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 431: DBS2.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    tabular:
      DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

We note that

- Listing 429 specifies `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` for *every* environment (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 58 on page 31); the double back slashes from Listing 427 have been moved to their own line in Listing 428;
- Listing 431 specifies `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` on a *per-name* basis for `tabular` (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 58 on page 31); the double back slashes from Listing 427 have been moved to their own line in Listing 430, having added comment symbols before moving them.

### 6.3.2.2 Double back slash finishes with line break

Let's now explore `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` (□ in Listing 427); starting with the code in Listing 427, together with the YAML files given in Listing 433 and Listing 435 and running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS3.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m tabular3.tex -l DBS4.yaml
```

then we receive the respective output given in Listing 432 and Listing 434.

LISTING 432: tabular3.tex using  
Listing 433

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 \\
  3 & 4 \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 433: DBS3.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

LISTING 434: tabular3.tex using  
Listing 435

```
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  1 & 2 \\% \\
  3 & 4 \\
\end{tabular}
```

LISTING 435: DBS4.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    tabular:
      DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

We note that

- Listing 433 specifies `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` for *every* environment (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 58 on page 31); the code following the double back slashes from Listing 427 has been moved to their own line in Listing 432;
- Listing 435 specifies `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` on a *per-name* basis for `tabular` (that is within `lookForAlignDelims`, Listing 58 on page 31); the first double back slashes from List-



ing 427 have moved code following them to their own line in Listing 434, having added comment symbols before moving them; the final double back slashes have *not* added a line break as they are at the end of the body within the code block.

### 6.3.2.3 Double back slash poly-switches for specialBeginEnd

Let's explore the double back slash poly-switches for code blocks within `specialBeginEnd` code blocks (Listing 128 on page 43); we begin with the code within Listing 436.

LISTING 436: `special4.tex`

```
\< a& =b \\ & =c\\ & =d\\ & =e \>
```

Upon using the YAML settings in Listing 438, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m special4.tex -l DBS5.yaml
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 437.

LISTING 437: `special4.tex`  
using Listing 438

```
\<
  a & =b \\
    & =c \\
    & =d \\
    & =e %
\>
```

LISTING 438: `DBS5.yaml`

```
specialBeginEnd:
  cmhMath:
    lookForThis: 1
    begin: '\\<'
    end: '\\>'
lookForAlignDelims:
  cmhMath: 1
modifyLineBreaks:
  specialBeginEnd:
    cmhMath:
      DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
      SpecialBodyStartsOnOwnLine: 1
      SpecialEndStartsOnOwnLine: 2
```

There are a few things to note:

- in Listing 438 we have specified `cmhMath` within `lookForAlignDelims`; without this, the double back slash poly-switches would be ignored for this code block;
- the `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` poly-switch has controlled the line breaks following the double back slashes;
- the `SpecialEndStartsOnOwnLine` poly-switch has controlled the addition of a comment symbol, followed by a line break, as it is set to a value of 2.

### 6.3.2.4 Double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments

For clarity, we provide a demonstration of controlling the double back slash poly-switches for optional and mandatory arguments. We begin with the code in Listing 439.

LISTING 439: `mycommand2.tex`

```
\mycommand [
  1&2   &3\\ 4&5&6]{
7&8   &9\\ 10&11&12
}
```

Upon using the YAML settings in Listings 441 and 443, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m mycommand2.tex -l DBS6.yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m mycommand2.tex -l DBS7.yaml
```



then we receive the output given in Listings 440 and 442.

LISTING 440: mycommand2.tex  
using Listing 441

```
\mycommand [
  1 & 2 & 3 %
  \\%
  4 & 5 & 6]{
  7 & 8 & 9 \\ 10&11&12
}
```

LISTING 442: mycommand2.tex  
using Listing 443

```
\mycommand [
  1&2 &3\\ 4&5&6]{
  7 & 8 & 9 %
  \\%
  10 & 11 & 12
}
```

LISTING 441: DBS6.yaml

-m

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  mycommand: 1
modifyLineBreaks:
  optionalArguments:
    DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 2
    DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

LISTING 443: DBS7.yaml

-m

```
lookForAlignDelims:
  mycommand: 1
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    DBSStartsOnOwnLine: 2
    DBSFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

### 6.3.2.5 Double back slash optional square brackets

The pattern matching for the double back slash will also, optionally, allow trailing square brackets that contain a measurement of vertical spacing, for example `\\[3pt]`.

For example, beginning with the code in Listing 444

LISTING 444: pmatrix3.tex

```
\begin{pmatrix}
  1 & 2 \\[2pt] 3 & 4 \\ [ 3 ex] 5&6\\[ 4 pt ] 7 & 8
\end{pmatrix}
```

and running the following command, using Listing 433,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m pmatrix3.tex -l DBS3.yaml
```

then we receive the output given in Listing 445.

LISTING 445: pmatrix3.tex using Listing 433

```
\begin{pmatrix}
  1 & 2 \\[2pt]
  3 & 4 \\ [ 3 ex]
  5 & 6 \\[ 4 pt ]
  7 & 8
\end{pmatrix}
```

You can customise the pattern for the double back slash by exploring the *fine tuning* field detailed in Listing 510 on page 125.

### 6.3.3 Poly-switches for other code blocks

Rather than repeat the examples shown for the environment code blocks (in Section 6.3.1 on page 93), we choose to detail the poly-switches for all other code blocks in Table 3; note that each and every one of these poly-switches is *off by default*, i.e., set to 0.

Note also that, by design, line breaks involving `filecontents` and ‘comment-marked’ code blocks (Listing 92 on page 37) can *not* be modified using `latexindent.pl`. However, there are two poly-switches available for verbatim code blocks: environments (Listing 34 on page 26), commands (Listing 35 on page 26) and `specialBeginEnd` (Listing 141 on page 45).



TABLE 3: Poly-switch mappings for all code-block types

Code block	Sample	Poly-switch mapping
environment	before words♠ \begin{myenv}♥ body of myenv◇ \end{myenv}♣ after words	♠ BeginStartsOnOwnLine ♥ BodyStartsOnOwnLine ◇ EndStartsOnOwnLine ♣ EndFinishesWithLineBreak
ifelsefi	before words♠ \if...♥ body of if/or statement▲ \or▼ body of if/or statement★ \else□ body of else statement◇ \fi♣ after words	♠ IfStartsOnOwnLine ♥ BodyStartsOnOwnLine ▲ OrStartsOnOwnLine ▼ OrFinishesWithLineBreak ★ ElseStartsOnOwnLine □ ElseFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ FiStartsOnOwnLine ♣ FiFinishesWithLineBreak
optionalArguments	...♠ [♥ value before comma★, □ end of body of opt arg◇ ]♣ ...	♠ LSqBStartsOnOwnLine <sup>8</sup> ♥ OptArgBodyStartsOnOwnLine ★ CommaStartsOnOwnLine □ CommaFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ RSqBStartsOnOwnLine ♣ RSqBFinishesWithLineBreak
mandatoryArguments	...♠ {♥ value before comma★, □ end of body of mand arg◇ }♣ ...	♠ LCuBStartsOnOwnLine <sup>9</sup> ♥ MandArgBodyStartsOnOwnLine ★ CommaStartsOnOwnLine □ CommaFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ RCuBStartsOnOwnLine ♣ RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak
commands	before words♠ \mycommand♥ (arguments)	♠ CommandStartsOnOwnLine ♥ CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak
namedGroupingBracesBrackets	before words♠ myname♥ {braces/brackets}	♠ NameStartsOnOwnLine ♥ NameFinishesWithLineBreak
keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets	before words♠ key=♥ {braces/brackets}	♠ KeyStartsOnOwnLine • EqualsStartsOnOwnLine ♥ EqualsFinishesWithLineBreak
items	before words♠ \item♥ ...	♠ ItemStartsOnOwnLine ♥ ItemFinishesWithLineBreak
specialBeginEnd	before words♠ \[♥ body of special/middle★ \middle□ body of special/middle ◇ \]♣ after words	♠ SpecialBeginStartsOnOwnLine ♥ SpecialBodyStartsOnOwnLine ★ SpecialMiddleStartsOnOwnLine □ SpecialMiddleFinishesWithLineBreak ◇ SpecialEndStartsOnOwnLine ♣ SpecialEndFinishesWithLineBreak
verbatim	before words♠\begin{verbatim}	♠ VerbatimBeginStartsOnOwnLine

<sup>8</sup>LSqB stands for Left Square Bracket<sup>9</sup>LCuB stands for Left Curly Brace





N: 2019-05-05

body of verbatim \end{verbatim}♣ ♣ VerbatimEndFinishesWithLineBreak  
after words

#### 6.3.4 Partnering BodyStartsOnOwnLine with argument-based poly-switches

Some poly-switches need to be partnered together; in particular, when line breaks involving the *first* argument of a code block need to be accounted for using both BodyStartsOnOwnLine (or its equivalent, see Table 3 on the preceding page) and LCuBStartsOnOwnLine for mandatory arguments, and LSqBStartsOnOwnLine for optional arguments.

Let's begin with the code in Listing 446 and the YAML settings in Listing 448; with reference to Table 3 on the previous page, the key CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak is an alias for BodyStartsOnOwnLine.

LISTING 446: mycommand1.tex

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=mycom-mlb1.yaml mycommand1.tex
```

we obtain Listing 447; note that the *second* mandatory argument beginning brace { has had its leading line break removed, but that the *first* brace has not.

LISTING 447: mycommand1.tex using Listing 448

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 448: mycom-mlb1.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  commands:
    CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak: 0
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

Now let's change the YAML file so that it is as in Listing 450; upon running the analogous command to that given above, we obtain Listing 449; both beginning braces { have had their leading line breaks removed.

LISTING 449: mycommand1.tex using Listing 450

```
\mycommand{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 450: mycom-mlb2.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  commands:
    CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: -1
```

Now let's change the YAML file so that it is as in Listing 452; upon running the analogous command to that given above, we obtain Listing 451.



LISTING 451: mycommand1.tex using Listing 452

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 452: mycom-mlb3.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  commands:
    CommandNameFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: 1
```

### 6.3.5 Conflicting poly-switches: sequential code blocks

It is very easy to have conflicting poly-switches; if we use the example from Listing 446 on the preceding page, and consider the YAML settings given in Listing 454. The output from running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=mycom-mlb4.yaml mycommand1.tex
```

is given in Listing 454.

LISTING 453: mycommand1.tex using Listing 454

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 454: mycom-mlb4.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: -1
    RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

Studying Listing 454, we see that the two poly-switches are at opposition with one another:

- on the one hand, LCuBStartsOnOwnLine should *not* start on its own line (as poly-switch is set to -1);
- on the other hand, RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak *should* finish with a line break.

So, which should win the conflict? As demonstrated in Listing 453, it is clear that LCuBStartsOnOwnLine won this conflict, and the reason is that *the second argument was processed after the first* – in general, the most recently-processed code block and associated poly-switch takes priority.

We can explore this further by considering the YAML settings in Listing 456; upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=mycom-mlb5.yaml mycommand1.tex
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 455.

LISTING 455: mycommand1.tex using Listing 456

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 456: mycom-mlb5.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak:
      -1
```

As previously, the most-recently-processed code block takes priority – as before, the second (i.e., *last*) argument. Exploring this further, we consider the YAML settings in Listing 458, which give associated output in Listing 457.



LISTING 457: mycommand1.tex using Listing 458

```
\mycommand
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}%
{
  mand arg text
  mand arg text}
```

LISTING 458: mycom-mlb6.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  mandatoryArguments:
    LCuBStartsOnOwnLine: 2
    RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak:
      -1
```

Note that a *%* has been added to the trailing first *}*; this is because:

- while processing the *first* argument, the trailing line break has been removed (RCuBFinishesWithLineBreak set to *-1*);
- while processing the *second* argument, latexindent.pl finds that it does *not* begin on its own line, and so because LCuBStartsOnOwnLine is set to 2, it adds a comment, followed by a line break.

### 6.3.6 Conflicting poly-switches: nested code blocks

Now let's consider an example when nested code blocks have conflicting poly-switches; we'll use the code in Listing 459, noting that it contains nested environments.

LISTING 459: nested-env.tex

```
\begin{one}
one text
\begin{two}
two text
\end{two}
\end{one}
```

Let's use the YAML settings given in Listing 461, which upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=nested-env-mlb1.yaml nested-env.tex
```

gives the output in Listing 460.

LISTING 460: nested-env.tex using Listing 461

```
\begin{one}
one text
\begin{two}
two text\end{two}\end{one}
```

LISTING 461: nested-env-mlb1.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: -1
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 1
```

In Listing 460, let's first of all note that both environments have received the appropriate (default) indentation; secondly, note that the poly-switch EndStartsOnOwnLine appears to have won the conflict, as `\end{one}` has had its leading line break removed.

To understand it, let's talk about the three basic phases of latexindent.pl:

1. Phase 1: packing, in which code blocks are replaced with unique ids, working from *the inside to the outside*, and then sequentially – for example, in Listing 459, the two environment is found *before* the one environment; if the *-m* switch is active, then during this phase:
  - line breaks at the beginning of the body can be added (if BodyStartsOnOwnLine is 1 or 2) or removed (if BodyStartsOnOwnLine is *-1*);
  - line breaks at the end of the body can be added (if EndStartsOnOwnLine is 1 or 2) or removed (if EndStartsOnOwnLine is *-1*);



- line breaks after the end statement can be added (if `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` is 1 or 2).
2. Phase 2: indentation, in which white space is added to the begin, body, and end statements;
  3. Phase 3: unpacking, in which unique ids are replaced by their *indented* code blocks; if the `-m` switch is active, then during this phase,
    - line breaks before begin statements can be added or removed (depending upon `BeginStartsOnOwnLine`);
    - line breaks after *end* statements can be removed but *NOT* added (see `EndFinishesWithLineBreak`).

With reference to Listing 460, this means that during Phase 1:

- the `two` environment is found first, and the line break ahead of the `\end{two}` statement is removed because `EndStartsOnOwnLine` is set to `-1`. Importantly, because, *at this stage*, `\end{two}` *does* finish with a line break, `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` causes no action.
- next, the `one` environment is found; the line break ahead of `\end{one}` is removed because `EndStartsOnOwnLine` is set to `-1`.

The indentation is done in Phase 2; in Phase 3 *there is no option to add a line break after the end statements*. We can justify this by remembering that during Phase 3, the `one` environment will be found and processed first, followed by the `two` environment. If the `two` environment were to add a line break after the `\end{two}` statement, then `latexindent.pl` would have no way of knowing how much indentation to add to the subsequent text (in this case, `\end{one}`).

We can explore this further using the poly-switches in Listing 463; upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m -l=nested-env-mlb2.yaml nested-env.tex
```

we obtain the output given in Listing 462.

LISTING 462: `nested-env.tex` using Listing 463

```
\begin{one}
  one text
  \begin{two}
    two text
  \end{two}\end{one}
```

LISTING 463: `nested-env-mlb2.yaml` -m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    EndStartsOnOwnLine: 1
    EndFinishesWithLineBreak: -1
```

During Phase 1:

- the `two` environment is found first, and the line break ahead of the `\end{two}` statement is not changed because `EndStartsOnOwnLine` is set to 1. Importantly, because, *at this stage*, `\end{two}` *does* finish with a line break, `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` causes no action.
- next, the `one` environment is found; the line break ahead of `\end{one}` is already present, and no action is needed.

The indentation is done in Phase 2, and then in Phase 3, the `one` environment is found and processed first, followed by the `two` environment. *At this stage*, the `two` environment finds `EndFinishesWithLineBreak` is `-1`, so it removes the trailing line break; remember, at this point, `latexindent.pl` has completely finished with the `one` environment.

## SECTION 7



# The -r, -rv and -rr switches

N: 2019-07-13

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to perform replacements/substitutions on your file by using any of the `-r`, `-rv` or `-rr` switches:

- the `-r` switch will perform indentation and replacements, not respecting verbatim code blocks;
- the `-rv` switch will perform indentation and replacements, and *will* respect verbatim code blocks;
- the `-rr` switch will *not* perform indentation, and will perform replacements not respecting verbatim code blocks.

We will demonstrate each of the `-r`, `-rv` and `-rr` switches, but a summary is given in Table 4.

TABLE 4: The replacement mode switches

switch	indentation?	respect verbatim?
<code>-r</code>	✓	✗
<code>-rv</code>	✓	✓
<code>-rr</code>	✗	✗

The default value of the `replacements` field is shown in Listing 464; as with all of the other fields, you are encouraged to customise and change this as you see fit. The options in this field will *only* be considered if the `-r`, `-rv` or `-rr` switches are active; when discussing YAML settings related to the replacement-mode switches, we will use the style given in Listing 464.

LISTING 464: replacements

-r

```
609 replacements:
610 -
611   amalgamate: 1
612 -
613   this: 'latexindent.pl'
614   that: 'pl.latexindent'
615   lookForThis: 0
616   when: before
```

The first entry within the `replacements` field is `amalgamate`, and is *optional*; by default it is set to 1, so that replacements will be amalgamated from each settings file that you specify. As you'll see in the demonstrations that follow, there is no need to specify this field.

You'll notice that, by default, there is only *one* entry in the `replacements` field, but it can take as many entries as you would like; each one needs to begin with a `-` on its own line.

### 7.1 Introduction to replacements

Let's explore the action of the default settings, and then we'll demonstrate the feature with further examples. With reference to Listing 464, the default action will replace every instance of the text `latexindent.pl` with `pl.latexindent`.

Beginning with the code in Listing 465 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r replace1.tex
```



gives the output given in Listing 466.

LISTING 465: replace1.tex	LISTING 466: replace1.tex default
Before text, latexindent.pl, after text.	Before text, latexindent.pl, after text.

If we don't wish to perform this replacement, then we can tweak the default settings of Listing 464 on the previous page by changing `lookForThis` to 0; we perform this action in Listing 468, and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r replace1.tex -l=replace1.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 467.

LISTING 467: replace1.tex using Listing 468	LISTING 468: replace1.yaml <span>-r</span>
Before text, latexindent.pl, after text.	<pre>replacements:   -     amalgamate: 0   -     this: latexindent.pl     that: pl.latexindent     lookForThis: 0</pre>

Note that in Listing 468 we have specified `amalgamate` as 0 so that the default replacements are overwritten.

We haven't yet discussed the `when` field; don't worry, we'll get to it as part of the discussion in what follows.

## 7.2 The two types of replacements

There are two types of replacements:

1. *string*-based replacements, which replace the string in *this* with the string in *that*. If you specify *this* and you do not specify *that*, then the *that* field will be assumed to be empty.
2. *regex*-based replacements, which use the substitution field.

We will demonstrate both in the examples that follow.

`latexindent.pl` chooses which type of replacement to make based on which fields have been specified; if the `this` field is specified, then it will make *string*-based replacements, regardless of if substitution is present or not.

## 7.3 Examples of replacements

**Example 18** We begin with code given in Listing 469

LISTING 469: colsep.tex
<pre>\begin{env} 1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt 4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt \end{env}</pre>

Let's assume that our goal is to remove both of the `arraycolsep` statements; we can achieve this in a few different ways.

Using the YAML in Listing 471, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=colsep.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 470.



LISTING 470: colsep.tex using Listing 469

```
\begin{env}
  1 2 3
  4 5 6
\end{env}
```

LISTING 471: colsep.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: \arraycolsep=3pt
-
  this: \arraycolsep=5pt
```

Note that in Listing 471, we have specified *two* separate fields, each with their own *this* field; furthermore, for both of the separate fields, we have not specified *that*, so the *that* field is assumed to be blank by `latexindent.pl`;

We can make the YAML in Listing 471 more concise by exploring the substitution field. Using the settings in Listing 473 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=colsep1.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 472.

LISTING 472: colsep.tex using Listing 473

```
\begin{env}
  1 2 3
  4 5 6
\end{env}
```

LISTING 473: colsep1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: s/\\arraycolsep=\d+pt//sg
```

The code given in Listing 473 is an example of a *regular expression*, which we may abbreviate to *regex* in what follows. This manual is not intended to be a tutorial on regular expressions; you might like to read, for example, [27] for a detailed covering of the topic. With reference to Listing 473, we do note the following:

- the general form of the substitution field is `s/regex/replacement/modifiers`. You can place any regular expression you like within this;
- we have ‘escaped’ the backslash by using `\\`
- we have used `\d+` to represent *at least* one digit
- the *s* modifier (in the `sg` at the end of the line) instructs `latexindent.pl` to treat your file as one single line;
- the *g* modifier (in the `sg` at the end of the line) instructs `latexindent.pl` to make the substitution *globally* throughout your file; you might try removing the *g* modifier from Listing 473 and observing the difference in output.

You might like to see <https://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html#Modifiers> for details of modifiers; in general, I recommend starting with the *sg* modifiers for this feature.

**Example 19** We’ll keep working with the file in Listing 469 on the preceding page for this example.

Using the YAML in Listing 475, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=multi-line.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 474.



LISTING 474: colsep.tex using Listing 475

```
multi-line!
```

LISTING 475: multi-line.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: |-
    \begin{env}
    1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt
    4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt
    \end{env}
  that: 'multi-line!'
```

With reference to Listing 475, we have specified a *multi-line* version of this by employing the *literal* YAML style `|-`. See, for example, <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/3790454/in-yaml-how-do-i-break-a-string-over-multiple-lines> for further options, all of which can be used in your YAML file.

This is a natural point to explore the `when` field, specified in Listing 464 on page 109. This field can take two values: *before* and *after*, which respectively instruct `latexindent.pl` to perform the replacements *before* indentation or *after* it. The default value is *before*.

Using the YAML in Listing 477, and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r colsep.tex -l=multi-line1.yaml
```

then we achieve the output in Listing 476.

LISTING 476: colsep.tex using Listing 477

```
\begin{env}
  1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt
  4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt
\end{env}
```

LISTING 477: multi-line1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: |-
    \begin{env}
    1 2 3\arraycolsep=3pt
    4 5 6\arraycolsep=5pt
    \end{env}
  that: 'multi-line!'
  when: after
```

We note that, because we have specified `when: after`, that `latexindent.pl` has not found the string specified in Listing 477 within the file in Listing 469 on page 110. As it has looked for the string within Listing 477 *after* the indentation has been performed. After indentation, the string as written in Listing 477 is no longer part of the file, and has therefore not been replaced.

As a final note on this example, if you use the `-rr` switch, as follows,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rr colsep.tex -l=multi-line1.yaml
```

then the `when` field is ignored, no indentation is done, and the output is as in Listing 474.

**Example 20** An important part of the substitution routine is in *capture groups*.

Assuming that we start with the code in Listing 478, let's assume that our goal is to replace each occurrence of `$$...$$` with `\begin{equation*}...\end{equation*}`. This example is partly motivated by [tex stackexchange question 242150](#).





LISTING 478: displaymath.tex

```
before text $$a^2+b^2=4$$ and $$c^2$$

$$
d^2+e^2 = f^2
$$
and also $$ g^2
$$ and some inline math: $h^2$
```

We use the settings in Listing 480 and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r displaymath.tex -l=displaymath1.yaml
```

to receive the output given in Listing 479.

LISTING 479: displaymath.tex using Listing 480

```
before text \begin{equation*}a^2+b^2=4\end{equation*}
and \begin{equation*}c^2\end{equation*}

\begin{equation*}
d^2+e^2 = f^2
\end{equation*}
and also \begin{equation*} g^2
\end{equation*} and some inline math: $h^2$
```

LISTING 480: displaymath1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: |-
    s/\$\$
    (.*?)
    \$\$/\begin{equation*}$1\end{equation*}/sgx
```

A few notes about Listing 480:

1. we have used the `x` modifier, which allows us to have white space within the regex;
2. we have used a capture group, `(.*?)` which captures the content between the `$$...$$` into the special variable, `$1`;
3. we have used the content of the capture group, `$1`, in the replacement text.

See <https://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html#Capture-groups> for a discussion of capture groups.

The features of the replacement switches can, of course, be combined with others from the toolkit of `latexindent.pl`. For example, we can combine the poly-switches of Section 6.3 on page 92, which we do in Listing 482; upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r -m displaymath.tex -l=displaymath1.yaml,equation.yaml
```

then we receive the output in Listing 481.



LISTING 481:  
displaymath.tex using  
Listings 480 and 482

```
before text%
\begin{equation*}%
  a^2+b^2=4%
\end{equation*}%
and%
\begin{equation*}%
  c^2%
\end{equation*}

\begin{equation*}
  d^2+e^2 = f^2
\end{equation*}
and also%
\begin{equation*}%
  g^2
\end{equation*}%
and some inline math: $h^2$
```

LISTING 482: equation.yaml

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  environments:
    equation*:
      BeginStartsOnOwnLine: 2
      BodyStartsOnOwnLine: 2
      EndStartsOnOwnLine: 2
      EndFinishesWithLineBreak: 2
```

**Example 21** This example is motivated by [tex stackexchange question 490086](#). We begin with the code in Listing 483.

LISTING 483: phrase.tex

phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100
phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100
phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100
phrase 1	phrase 2 phrase 3	phrase 100

Our goal is to make the spacing uniform between the phrases. To achieve this, we employ the settings in Listing 485, and run the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r phrase.tex -l=hspace.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 484.

LISTING 484: phrase.tex using  
Listing 485

```
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
phrase 1 phrase 2 phrase 3 phrase 100
```

LISTING 485: hspace.yaml

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: s/\h+/ /sg
```

The `\h+` setting in Listing 485 say to replace *at least one horizontal space* with a single space.

**Example 22** We begin with the code in Listing 486.



LISTING 486: references.tex

```
equation \eqref{eq:aa} and Figure \ref{fig:bb}
and table~\ref{tab:cc}
```

Our goal is to change each reference so that both the text and the reference are contained within one hyperlink. We achieve this by employing Listing 488 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r references.tex -l=reference.yaml
```

which gives the output in Listing 487.

LISTING 487: references.tex using Listing 488

```
\hyperref{equation \ref*{eq:aa}} and \hyperref{Figure \ref*{fig:bb}}
and \hyperref{table \ref*{tab:cc}}
```

LISTING 488: reference.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  substitution: |-
    s/(
      equation
    |
      table
    |
      figure
    |
      section
    )
    (\h|~)*
    \\(?:eq)?
    ref\{(.*)\}/\hyperref{$1 \ref*{$3}}/sgxi
```

Referencing Listing 488, the | means *or*, we have used *capture groups*, together with an example of an *optional pattern*, (?:eq)?.

**Example 23** Let's explore the three replacement mode switches (see Table 4 on page 109) in the context of an example that contains a verbatim code block, Listing 489; we will use the settings in Listing 490.

LISTING 489: verb1.tex

```
\begin{myenv}
body of verbatim
\end{myenv}
some verbatim
\begin{verbatim}
  body
    of
  verbatim
text
\end{verbatim}
text
```

LISTING 490: verbatim1.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: 'body'
  that: 'head'
```

Upon running the following commands,



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r verb1.tex -l=verbatim1.yaml -o+=mod1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rv verb1.tex -l=verbatim1.yaml -o+=rv-mod1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -rr verb1.tex -l=verbatim1.yaml -o+=rr-mod1
```

we receive the respective output in Listings 491 to 493

LISTING 491: verb1-mod1.tex	LISTING 492: verb1-rv-mod1.tex	LISTING 493: verb1-rr-mod1.tex
<pre>\begin{myenv}   head of verbatim \end{myenv} some verbatim \begin{verbatim}   head     of   verbatim text \end{verbatim} text</pre>	<pre>\begin{myenv}   head of verbatim \end{myenv} some verbatim \begin{verbatim}   body     of   verbatim text \end{verbatim} text</pre>	<pre>\begin{myenv} head of verbatim \end{myenv} some verbatim \begin{verbatim}   head     of   verbatim text \end{verbatim} text</pre>

We note that:

1. in Listing 491 indentation has been performed, and that the replacements specified in Listing 490 have been performed, even within the verbatim code block;
2. in Listing 492 indentation has been performed, but that the replacements have *not* been performed within the verbatim environment, because the *rv* switch is active;
3. in Listing 493 indentation has *not* been performed, but that replacements have been performed, not respecting the verbatim code block.

See the summary within Table 4 on page 109.

**Example 24** Let's explore the `amalgamate` field from Listing 464 on page 109 in the context of the file specified in Listing 494.

LISTING 494: amalg1.tex

```
one two three
```

Let's consider the YAML files given in Listings 495 to 497.

LISTING 495: amalg1-yaml.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: one
  that: 1
```

LISTING 496: amalg2-yaml.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  this: two
  that: 2
```

LISTING 497: amalg3-yaml.yaml

-r

```
replacements:
-
  amalgamate: 0
-
  this: three
  that: 3
```

Upon running the following commands,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r amalg1.tex -l=amalg1-yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r amalg1.tex -l=amalg1-yaml,amalg2-yaml
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -r amalg1.tex -l=amalg1-yaml,amalg2-yaml,amalg3-yaml
```

we receive the respective output in Listings 498 to 500.



LISTING 498: <code>amalg1.tex</code> using Listing 495	LISTING 499: <code>amalg1.tex</code> using Listings 495 and 496	LISTING 500: <code>amalg1.tex</code> using Listings 495 to 497
1 two three	1 2 three	one two 3

We note that:

1. in Listing 498 the replacements from Listing 495 have been used;
2. in Listing 499 the replacements from Listings 495 and 496 have *both* been used, because the default value of `amalgamate` is 1;
3. in Listing 500 *only* the replacements from Listing 497 have been used, because the value of `amalgamate` has been set to 0.

## SECTION 8



# The `-lines` switch

N: 2021-09-16

`latexindent.pl` can operate on a *selection* of lines of the file using the `-lines` or `-n` switch.

The basic syntax is `-lines MIN-MAX`, so for example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-7 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -n 3-7 myfile.tex
```

will only operate upon lines 3 to 7 in `myfile.tex`. All of the other lines will *not* be operated upon by `latexindent.pl`.

The options for the `lines` switch are:

- line range, as in `-lines 3-7`
- single line, as in `-lines 5`
- multiple line ranges separated by commas, as in `-lines 3-5,8-10`
- negated line ranges, as in `-lines !3-5` which translates to `-lines 1-2,6-N`, where N is the number of lines in your file.

We demonstrate this feature, and the available variations in what follows. We will use the file in Listing 501.

LISTING 501: `myfile.tex`

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11    \end{two}
12 \end{one}
```

**Example 25** We demonstrate the basic usage using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-7 myfile.tex -o=+-mod1
```

which instructs `latexindent.pl` to only operate on lines 3 to 7; the output is given in Listing 502.



## LISTING 502: myfile-mod1.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3 first block, first line
4 first block, second line
5 first block, third line
6 \begin{two}
7 second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11 \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```

The following two calls to `latexindent.pl` are equivalent

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-7 myfile.tex -o=+-mod1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 7-3 myfile.tex -o=+-mod1

```

as `latexindent.pl` performs a check to put the lowest number first.

**Example 26** You can call the lines switch with only *one number* and in which case only that line will be operated upon. For example

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 5 myfile.tex -o=+-mod2

```

instructs `latexindent.pl` to only operate on line 5; the output is given in Listing 503.

## LISTING 503: myfile-mod2.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3 first block, first line
4 first block, second line
5 first block, third line
6 \begin{two}
7 second block, first line
8 second block, second line
9 second block, third line
10 second block, fourth line
11 \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```

The following two calls are equivalent:

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 5 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 5-5 myfile.tex

```

**Example 27** If you specify a value outside of the line range of the file then `latexindent.pl` will ignore the lines argument, detail as such in the log file, and proceed to operate on the entire file.

For example, in the following call

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 11-13 myfile.tex

```



latexindent.pl will ignore the lines argument, and *operate on the entire file* because Listing 501 only has 12 lines.

Similarly, in the call

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines -1-3 myfile.tex
```

latexindent.pl will ignore the lines argument, and *operate on the entire file* because we assume that negatively numbered lines in a file do not exist.

**Example 28** You can specify *multiple line ranges* as in the following

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-5,8-10 myfile.tex -o=+-mod3
```

which instructs latexindent.pl to operate upon lines 3 to 5 and lines 8 to 10; the output is given in Listing 504.

LISTING 504: myfile-mod3.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3 first block, first line
4 first block, second line
5 first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8 second block, second line
9 second block, third line
10 second block, fourth line
11   \end{two}
12 \end{one}
```

The following calls to latexindent.pl are all equivalent

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 3-5,8-10 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 8-10,3-5 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 10-8,3-5 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 10-8,5-3 myfile.tex
```

as latexindent.pl performs a check to put the lowest line ranges first, and within each line range, it puts the lowest number first.

**Example 29** There's no limit to the number of line ranges that you can specify, they just need to be separated by commas. For example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-2,4-5,9-10,12 myfile.tex -o=+-mod4
```

has four line ranges: lines 1 to 2, lines 4 to 5, lines 9 to 10 and line 12. The output is given in Listing 505.





LISTING 505: myfile-mod4.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11    \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```

As previously, the ordering does not matter, and the following calls to `latexindent.pl` are all equivalent

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-2,4-5,9-10,12 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 2-1,4-5,9-10,12 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 4-5,1-2,9-10,12 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 12,4-5,1-2,9-10 myfile.tex

```

as `latexindent.pl` performs a check to put the lowest line ranges first, and within each line range, it puts the lowest number first.

**Example 30** You can specify *negated line ranges* by using `!` as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !5-7 myfile.tex -o+=-mod5
```

which instructs `latexindent.pl` to operate upon all of the lines *except* lines 5 to 7.

In other words, `latexindent.pl` *will* operate on lines 1 to 4, and 8 to 12, so the following two calls are equivalent:

```

cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !5-7 myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-4,8-12 myfile.tex

```

The output is given in Listing 506.

LISTING 506: myfile-mod5.tex

```

1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11    \end{two}
12 \end{one}

```



**Example 31** You can specify *multiple negated line ranges* such as

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !5-7,!9-10 myfile.tex -o=+-mod6
```

which is equivalent to:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-4,8,11-12 myfile.tex -o=+-mod6
```

The output is given in Listing 507.

LISTING 507: myfile-mod6.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two}
7     second block, first line
8     second block, second line
9     second block, third line
10    second block, fourth line
11  \end{two}
12 \end{one}
```

**Example 32** If you specify a line range with anything other than an integer, then `latexindent.pl` will ignore the lines argument, and *operate on the entire file*.

Sample calls that result in the lines argument being ignored include the following:

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 1-x myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines !y-3 myfile.tex
```

**Example 33** We can, of course, use the lines switch in combination with other switches.

For example, let's use with the file in Listing 508.

LISTING 508: myfile1.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6   \begin{two} body \end{two}
7 \end{one}
```

We can demonstrate interaction with the `-m` switch (see Section 6 on page 72); in particular, if we use Listing 403 on page 97, Listing 387 on page 95 and Listing 388 on page 95 and run

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --lines 6 myfile1.tex -o=+-mod1 -m -l env-mlb2,env-mlb7,env-mlb8 -o=+-mod1
```

then we receive the output in Listing 509.



## LISTING 509: myfile1-mod1.tex

```
1 Before the environments
2 \begin{one}
3   first block, first line
4   first block, second line
5   first block, third line
6 \begin{two}
7   body
8 \end{two}
9 \end{one}
```

## SECTION 9



# Fine tuning

N: 2019-07-13

`latexindent.pl` operates by looking for the code blocks detailed in Table 2 on page 49. The fine tuning of the details of such code blocks is controlled by the `fineTuning` field, detailed in Listing 510.

This field is for those that would like to peek under the bonnet/hood and make some fine tuning to `latexindent.pl`'s operating.



### Warning!

Making changes to the fine tuning may have significant consequences for your indentation scheme, proceed with caution!



## LISTING 510: fineTuning

```

620 fineTuning:
621   environments:
622     name: '[a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\]+'
623   ifElseFi:
624     name: '(!@?if[a-zA-Z@]*?\\{)@?if[a-zA-Z@]*?'
625   commands:
626     name: '[+a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\:]+?'
627   items:
628     canBeFollowedBy: '(?:\\[[^]]*?\\]|(?:<[>]*?>))'
629   keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets:
630     name: '[a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\.\\: \\#-]+[a-zA-Z@*0-9_\\.\\h\\{\\}: \\#-]*?'
631     follow: '(?:(<!(\\|)\\{)|,|(<!(\\|)\\[)'
632   namedGroupingBracesBrackets:
633     name: '[0-9\\.a-zA-Z@* ><]+?'
634     follow: '\\h\\R|\\{\\|\\[\\$\\|\\)\\|\\('
635   UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets:
636     follow: '\\{\\|\\[\\|,|&\\|\\)\\|\\(\\|\\$'
637   arguments:
638     before: '(?:#\\d\\h*;?/?)+|\\<.*?>'
639     between: '_|\\^|\\*'
640   trailingComments:
641     notPreceededBy: '(<!(\\|)\\{)'
642   modifyLineBreaks:
643     doubleBackSlash: '\\\\\\\\(?:\\h*\\[\\h*\\d+\\h*[a-zA-Z]+\\h*\\])?'
644     comma: ','
645     betterFullStop: |-
646         (?x)                                # ignore spaces in the below
647         (?:(?:                                #
648             \\.\\)                            # .)
649             (?!\\h*[a-z])                    # not *followed by* a-z
650         )                                    #
651         |                                    # OR
652         (?:(?:                                #
653             (?<!(?:                                # not *preceeded by*
654                 (?:(?:                                #
655                     (?:[eE]\\.[gG])                # e.g OR E.g OR e.G OR E.G
656                     |                                #
657                     (?:[iI]\\.[eE])                # i.e OR I.e OR i.E OR I.E
658                     |                                #
659                     (? :etc)                        # etc
660                 )                                #
661             )                                #
662         )                                    #
663         \\.                                # .
664         (?!(?:                                # not *followed by*
665             (?:(?:                                #
666                 [a-zA-Z0-9~~,]                    #
667                 |                                #
668                 \\),                            # ),
669                 |                                #
670                 \\)\\.                            # ).
671             )                                #
672         )                                    #

```

The fields given in Listing 510 are all *regular expressions*. This manual is not intended to be a tutorial on regular expressions; you might like to read, for example, [27] for a detailed covering of the topic.

We make the following comments with reference to Listing 510:

1. the environments:name field details that the *name* of an environment can contain:
  - (a) a-z lower case letters



- (b) A-Z upper case letters
- (c) @ the @ 'letter'
- (d) \\* stars
- (e) 0-9 numbers
- (f) \_ underscores
- (g) \ backslashes

The + at the end means *at least one* of the above characters.

2. the `ifElseFi:name` field:

- (a) @? means that it *can possibly* begin with @
- (b) followed by `if`
- (c) followed by 0 or more characters from a-z, A-Z and @
- (d) the ? the end means *non-greedy*, which means 'stop the match as soon as possible'

3. the `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets` contains some interesting syntax:

- (a) | means 'or'
- (b) (?:(<?!\\)\{) the (?:...) uses a *non-capturing* group – you don't necessarily need to worry about what this means, but just know that for the `fineTuning` feature you should only ever use *non-capturing* groups, and *not* capturing groups, which are simply (...)
- (c) (<?!\\)\{ means a { but it can *not* be immediately preceded by a \

4. in the `arguments:before` field

- (a) \d\h\* means a digit (i.e. a number), followed by 0 or more horizontal spaces
- (b) ;?;? means *possibly* a semi-colon, and possibly a comma
- (c) \<.\*?> is designed for 'beamer'-type commands; the .\*? means anything in between <...>

5. the `modifyLineBreaks` field refers to fine tuning settings detailed in Section 6 on page 72. In particular:

- (a) `betterFullStop` is in relation to the one sentence per line routine, detailed in Section 6.2 on page 84
- (b) `doubleBackSlash` is in relation to the `DBSStartsOnOwnLine` and `DBSFinishesWithLineBreak` polswitches surrounding double back slashes, see Section 6.3.2 on page 100
- (c) `comma` is in relation to the `CommaStartsOnOwnLine` and `CommaFinishesWithLineBreak` polswitches surrounding commas in optional and mandatory arguments; see Table 3 on page 104

It is not obvious from Listing 510, but each of the `follow`, `before` and `between` fields allow trailing comments, line breaks, and horizontal spaces between each character.



**Warning!**

For the `fineTuning` feature you should only ever use *non-capturing* groups, such as (?:...) and *not* capturing groups, which are (...)

**Example 34** As a demonstration, consider the file given in Listing 511, together with its default output using the command



```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning1.tex
```

is given in Listing 512.

LISTING 511: finetuning1.tex

```
\mycommand{
  \rule{G -> +H[-G]CL}
  \rule{H -> -G[+H]CL}
  \rule{g -> +h[-g]cL}
  \rule{h -> -g[+h]cL}
}
```

LISTING 512: finetuning1.tex default

```
\mycommand{
  \rule{G -> +H[-G]CL}
  \rule{H -> -G[+H]CL}
  \rule{g -> +h[-g]cL}
  \rule{h -> -g[+h]cL}
}
```

It's clear from Listing 512 that the indentation scheme has not worked as expected. We can *fine tune* the indentation scheme by employing the settings given in Listing 514 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning1.tex -l=fine-tuning1.yaml
```

and the associated (desired) output is given in Listing 513.

LISTING 513: finetuning1.tex using Listing 514

```
\mycommand{
  \rule{G -> +H[-G]CL}
  \rule{H -> -G[+H]CL}
  \rule{g -> +h[-g]cL}
  \rule{h -> -g[+h]cL}
}
```

LISTING 514: finetuning1.yaml

```
fineTuning:
  arguments:
    between:
      '_|\^|\*|\->|\-|\+|h|H|g|G'
```

**Example 35** Let's have another demonstration; consider the file given in Listing 515, together with its default output using the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning2.tex
```

is given in Listing 516.

LISTING 515: finetuning2.tex

```
@misc{ wikilatex,
author = "{Wikipedia contributors}",
title = "LaTeX --- {Wikipedia}{,}",
note = "[Online; accessed 3-March-2020]"
}
```

LISTING 516: finetuning2.tex default

```
@misc{ wikilatex,
author = "{Wikipedia contributors}",
title = "LaTeX --- {Wikipedia}{,}",
note = "[Online; accessed 3-March-2020]"
}
```

It's clear from Listing 516 that the indentation scheme has not worked as expected. We can *fine tune* the indentation scheme by employing the settings given in Listing 518 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl finetuning2.tex -l=fine-tuning2.yaml
```

and the associated (desired) output is given in Listing 517.







LISTING 522: href1.yaml

-m

```
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: -1
    blocksEndBefore:
      verbatim: 0
    blocksFollow:
      verbatim: 0
removeTrailingWhitespace:
  beforeProcessing: 1
```

LISTING 523: href2.yaml

-m

```
fineTuning:
  trailingComments:
    notPreceededBy:
      '(?: (?<!Handbook) (?<!for) (?<!Spoken))'
modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: -1
    blocksEndBefore:
      verbatim: 0
    blocksFollow:
      verbatim: 0
removeTrailingWhitespace:
  beforeProcessing: 1
```

Upon running the following commands

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m finetuning4.tex -o=+-mod1 -l=href1
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m finetuning4.tex -o=+-mod2 -l=href2
```

we receive the respective output in Listings 524 and 525.

LISTING 524: finetuning4.tex using Listing 522

```
some before text \href{Handbook some after text%20for%30Spoken%40document.pdf}{my document}
```

LISTING 525: finetuning4.tex using Listing 523

```
some before text \href{Handbook%20for%30Spoken%40document.pdf}{my document} some after text
```

We note that in:

- Listing 524 the trailing comments are assumed to be everything following the first comment symbol, which has meant that everything following it has been moved to the end of the line; this is undesirable, clearly!
- Listing 525 has fine-tuned the trailing comment matching, and says that % cannot be immediately preceeded by the words 'Handbook', 'for' or 'Spoken', which means that none of the % symbols have been treated as trailing comments, and the output is desirable.

Another approach to this situation, which does not use fineTuning, is to use noIndentBlock which we discussed in Listing 40 on page 27; using the settings in Listing 526 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -m finetuning4.tex -o=+-mod3 -l=href3
```

then we receive the same output given in Listing 525.



LISTING 526: href3.yaml

```

modifyLineBreaks:
  textWrapOptions:
    columns: -1
    blocksEndBefore:
      verbatim: 0
    blocksFollow:
      verbatim: 0

noIndentBlock:
  href:
    begin: '\\href\[^\]*?\{\'
    body: '[^\]*?'
    end: '\}'

```

With reference to the body field in Listing 526, we note that the body field can be interpreted as: the fewest number of zero or more characters that are not right braces. This is an example of character class.

**Example 38** We can use the `fineTuning` field to assist in the formatting of bibliography files.

Starting with the file in Listing 527 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib1.tex -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output in Listing 528.

LISTING 527: bib1.bib

```

@online{paulo,
  title="arararule,indent.yaml",
  author="PauloCereda",
  date={2013-05-23},
  urldate={2021-03-19},
  keywords={contributor},}

```

LISTING 528: bib1-mod1.bib

```

@online{paulo,
  title="arararule,indent.yaml",
  author="PauloCereda",
  date={2013-05-23},
  urldate={2021-03-19},
  keywords={contributor},}

```

Let's assume that we would like to format the output so as to align the = symbols. Using the settings in Listing 530 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib1.bib -l bibsettings1.yaml -o=+-mod2
```

gives the output in Listing 529.

LISTING 529: bib1.bib using Listing 530

```

@online{paulo,
  title   = "arararule,indent.yaml",
  author  = "PauloCereda",
  date    = {2013-05-23},
  urldate = {2021-03-19},
  keywords = {contributor},}

```

LISTING 530: bibsettings1.yaml

```

lookForAlignDelims:
  online:
    delimiterRegEx: '(=)'

fineTuning:
  keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets:
    follow:
      '(?: (?<!\)\)\{) | (?: (?<!\)\)\[)'
  UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets:
    follow: '\{|\[|,|&|\)|\(|\$|=|'

```

Some notes about Listing 530:



- we have populated the `lookForAlignDelims` field with the `online` command, and have used the `delimiterRegEx`, discussed in Section 5.5.4 on page 39;
- we have tweaked the `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets` code block so that it will *not* be found following a comma; this means that, in contrast to the default behaviour, the lines such as `date={2013-05-23}`, will *not* be treated as key-equals-value braces;
- the adjustment to `keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets` necessitates the associated change to the `UnNamedGroupingBracesBrackets` field so that they will be searched for following `=` symbols.

**Example 39** We can build upon Listing 530 for slightly more complicated bibliography files.

Starting with the file in Listing 531 and running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib2.bib -l bibsettings1.yaml -o=+-mod1
```

gives the output in Listing 532.

LISTING 531: bib2.bib

```
@online{cmh:videodemo,
title="Videodemonstrationofpl.latexindentonyoutube",
url="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload=10",
urldate={2017-02-21},
}
```

LISTING 532: bib2-mod1.bib

```
@online{cmh:videodemo,
title = "Videodemonstrationofpl.latexindentonyoutube",
url    = "https://www.youtube.com/watch?v          = wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload = 10",
urldate = {2017-02-21},
}
```

The output in Listing 532 is not ideal, as the `=` symbol within the `url` field has been incorrectly used as an alignment delimiter.

We address this by tweaking the `delimiterRegEx` field in Listing 533.

LISTING 533: bibsettings2.yaml

```
lookForAlignDelims:
online:
delimiterRegEx: '(?!<v)(?!spfreload)(=)'
```

Upon running the command

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl bib2.bib -l bibsettings1.yaml,bibsettings2.yaml -o=+-mod2
```

we receive the *desired* output in Listing 534.

LISTING 534: bib2-mod2.bib

```
@online{cmh:videodemo,
title = "Videodemonstrationofpl.latexindentonyoutube",
url    = "https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload=10",
urldate = {2017-02-21},
}
```



With reference to Listing 533 we note that the `delimiterRegex` has been adjusted so that `=` symbols are used as the delimiter, but only when they are *not preceded* by either `v` or `spfreload`.

## SECTION 10



# Conclusions and known limitations

There are a number of known limitations of the script, and almost certainly quite a few that are *unknown*! The known issues include:

**multicolumn alignment** when working with code blocks in which multicolumn commands overlap, the algorithm can fail; see Listing 68 on page 33.

**text wrap** routine operates *before* indentation occurs; this means that it is likely that your final, indented, text wrapped text may exceed the value of `columns` that you specify; see Section 6.1 on page 73.

**efficiency** particularly when the `-m` switch is active, as this adds many checks and processes. The current implementation relies upon finding and storing *every* code block (see the discussion on page 107); I hope that, in a future version, only *nested* code blocks will need to be stored in the ‘packing’ phase, and that this will improve the efficiency of the script.

U: 2019-07-13

You can run `latexindent` on any file; if you don’t specify an extension, then the extensions that you specify in `fileExtensionPreference` (see Listing 32 on page 24) will be consulted. If you find a case in which the script struggles, please feel free to report it at [28], and in the meantime, consider using a `noIndentBlock` (see page 27).

I hope that this script is useful to some; if you find an example where the script does not behave as you think it should, the best way to contact me is to report an issue on [28]; otherwise, feel free to find me on the <http://tex.stackexchange.com/users/6621/cmhughes>.

# SECTION 11



## References

### 11.1 perl-related links

- [24] *CPAN: Comprehensive Perl Archive Network*. URL: <http://www.cpan.org/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [25] *Data Dumper demonstration*. URL: <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/7466825/how-do-you-sort-the-output-of-datadumper> (visited on 06/18/2021).
- [26] *Data::Dumper module*. URL: <https://perldoc.perl.org/Data::Dumper> (visited on 06/18/2021).
- [27] Jeffrey E. F. Friedl. *Mastering Regular Expressions*. ISBN: 0596002890.
- [32] *Log4perl Perl module*. URL: <http://search.cpan.org/~mschilli/Log-Log4perl-1.49/lib/Log/Log4perl.pm> (visited on 09/24/2017).
- [33] *Perlbrew*. URL: <http://perlbrew.pl/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [34] *perldoc Encode::Supported*. URL: <https://perldoc.perl.org/Encode::Supported> (visited on 05/06/2021).
- [37] *Strawberry Perl*. URL: <http://strawberryperl.com/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [38] *Text::Tabs Perl module*. URL: <http://search.cpan.org/~muir/Text-Tabs+Wrap-2013.0523/lib.old/Text/Tabs.pm> (visited on 07/06/2017).
- [39] *Text::Wrap Perl module*. URL: <http://perldoc.perl.org/Text/Wrap.html> (visited on 05/01/2017).

### 11.2 conda-related links

- [22] *anacoda*. URL: <https://www.anaconda.com/products/individual> (visited on 12/22/2021).
- [23] *conda forge*. URL: <https://github.com/conda-forge/miniforge> (visited on 12/22/2021).
- [30] *How to install Anaconda on Ubuntu?* URL: <https://askubuntu.com/questions/505919/how-to-install-anaconda-on-ubuntu> (visited on 01/21/2022).
- [36] *Solving environment: failed with initial frozen solve. Retrying with flexible solve*. URL: <https://github.com/conda/conda/issues/9367#issuecomment-558863143> (visited on 01/21/2022).

### 11.3 VSCode-related links

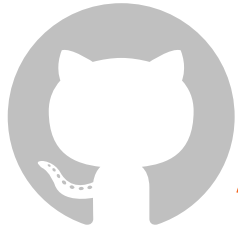
- [29] *How to create your own auto-completion for JSON and YAML files on VS Code with the help of JSON Schema*. URL: <https://dev.to/brpaz/how-to-create-your-own-auto-completion-for-json-and-yaml-files-on-vs-code-with-the-help-of-json-schema-k1i> (visited on 01/01/2022).
- [41] *VSCode YAML extension*. URL: <https://marketplace.visualstudio.com/items?itemName=redhat.vscode-yaml> (visited on 01/01/2022).

### 11.4 Other links

- [21] *A Perl script for indenting tex files*. URL: <http://tex.blogoverflow.com/2012/08/a-perl-script-for-indenting-tex-files/> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [28] *Home of latexindent.pl*. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [31] *How to use latexindent on Windows?* URL: <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/577250/how-to-use-latexindent-on-windows> (visited on 01/08/2022).
- [35] *pre-commit: A framework for managing and maintaining multi-language pre-commit hooks*. URL: <https://pre-commit.com/> (visited on 01/08/2022).
- [40] *Video demonstration of latexindent.pl on youtube*. URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wo38aaH2F4E&spfreload=10> (visited on 02/21/2017).
- [42] *Windows line breaks on Linux prevent removal of white space from end of line*. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/256> (visited on 06/18/2021).



## 11.5 Contributors (in chronological order)



- [1] Paulo Cereda. *arara rule, indent.yaml*. May 23, 2013. URL: <https://github.com/islandoftex/arara/blob/master/rules/arara-rule-indent.yaml> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [2] Harish Kumar. *Early version testing*. Nov. 10, 2013. URL: <https://github.com/harishkumarholla> (visited on 06/30/2017).
- [3] Michel Voßkuhle. *Remove trailing white space*. Nov. 10, 2013. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/12> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [4] Jacobo Diaz. *Changed shebang to make the script more portable*. July 23, 2014. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/17> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [5] Jacobo Diaz. *Hiddenconfig*. July 21, 2014. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/18> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [6] Jason Juang. *add in PATH installation*. Nov. 24, 2015. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/38> (visited on 01/23/2017).
- [7] mlep. *One sentence per line*. Aug. 16, 2017. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/81> (visited on 01/08/2018).
- [8] John Owens. *Paragraph line break routine removal*. May 27, 2017. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/33> (visited on 05/27/2017).
- [9] Cheng Xu (xu cheng). *always output log/help text to STDERR*. July 13, 2018. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/121> (visited on 08/05/2018).
- [10] Tom Zöhner (zoehneto). *Improving text wrap*. Feb. 4, 2018. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/103> (visited on 08/04/2018).
- [11] Sam Abey. *Print usage tip to STDERR only if STDIN is TTY*. Sept. 17, 2019. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/174> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [12] Randolph J. *Alpine-linux instructions*. Aug. 10, 2020. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/214> (visited on 08/10/2020).
- [13] jeanlego. *Search localSettings in CWD as well*. Sept. 15, 2020. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/221> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [14] newptcai. *Update appendices.tex*. Feb. 16, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/221> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [15] qiancy98. *Locale encoding of file system*. May 6, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/273> (visited on 05/06/2021).
- [16] Alexander Regueiro. *Update help screen*. Mar. 18, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/261> (visited on 03/19/2021).
- [17] XuehaiPan. *-y switch upgrade*. Nov. 12, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/297> (visited on 11/12/2021).
- [18] XuehaiPan. *Verbatim block upgrade*. Oct. 3, 2021. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/290> (visited on 10/03/2021).
- [19] Tom de Geus. *Adding Perl installation + pre-commit hook*. Jan. 21, 2022. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/322> (visited on 01/21/2022).
- [20] Jan Holthuis. *Fix pre-commit usage*. Mar. 31, 2022. URL: <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/pull/354> (visited on 04/02/2022).

# SECTION A



## Required Perl modules

If you intend to use `latexindent.pl` and *not* one of the supplied standalone executable files, then you will need a few standard Perl modules – if you can run the minimum code in Listing 535 (`perl helloworld.pl`) then you will be able to run `latexindent.pl`, otherwise you may need to install the missing modules – see appendices A.1 and A.2.

LISTING 535: `helloworld.pl`

```
#!/usr/bin/perl

use strict;                # |
use warnings;              # |
use Encode;                # |
use Getopt::Long;          # |
use Data::Dumper;          # these modules are
use List::Util qw(max);    # generally part
use PerlIO::encoding;      # of a default perl distribution
use open 'std', ':encoding(UTF-8)';# |
use Text::Wrap;            # |
use Text::Tabs;            # |
use FindBin;              # |
use File::Copy;           # |
use File::Basename;       # |
use File::HomeDir;        # <--- typically requires install via cpanm
use YAML::Tiny;           # <--- typically requires install via cpanm

print "hello_world";
exit;
```

### A.1 Module installer script

`latexindent.pl` ships with a helper script that will install any missing perl modules on your system; if you run

```
cmh:~$ perl latexindent-module-installer.pl
```

or

```
C:\Users\cmh>perl latexindent-module-installer.pl
```

then, once you have answered Y, the appropriate modules will be installed onto your distribution.

### A.2 Manually installing modules

Manually installing the modules given in Listing 535 will vary depending on your operating system and Perl distribution.

#### A.2.1 Linux

##### A.2.1.1 perlbrew

Linux users may be interested in exploring Perlbrew [33]; an example installation would be:





```
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get install perlbrew
cmh:~$ perlbrew init
cmh:~$ perlbrew install perl-5.28.1
cmh:~$ perlbrew switch perl-5.28.1
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get install curl
cmh:~$ curl -L http://cpanmin.us | perl - App::cpanminus
cmh:~$ cpanm YAML::Tiny
cmh:~$ cpanm File::HomeDir
```

#### A.2.1.2 Ubuntu/Debian

For other distributions, the Ubuntu/Debian approach may work as follows

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt install perl
cmh:~$ sudo cpan -i App::cpanminus
cmh:~$ sudo cpanm YAML::Tiny
cmh:~$ sudo cpanm File::HomeDir
```

or else by running, for example,

```
cmh:~$ sudo perl -MCPAN -e'install_ "File::HomeDir"'
```

#### A.2.1.3 Ubuntu: using the texlive from apt-get

Ubuntu users that install texlive using apt-get as in the following

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt install texlive
cmh:~$ sudo apt install texlive-latex-recommended
```

may need the following additional command to work with latexindent.pl

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt install texlive-extra-utils
```

#### A.2.1.4 Arch-based distributions

First install the dependencies

```
cmh:~$ sudo pacman -S perl cpanminus
```

then run the latexindent-module-installer.pl file located at helper-scripts/

#### A.2.1.5 Alpine

If you are using Alpine, some Perl modules are not build-compatible with Alpine, but replacements are available through apk. For example, you might use the commands given in Listing 536; thanks to [12] for providing these details.



## LISTING 536: alpine-install.sh

```
# Installing perl
apk --no-cache add miniperl perl-utils

# Installing incompatible latexindent perl dependencies via apk
apk --no-cache add \
    perl-log-dispatch \
    perl-namespace-autoclean \
    perl-specio \
    perl-unicode-linebreak

# Installing remaining latexindent perl dependencies via cpan
apk --no-cache add curl wget make
ls /usr/share/texmf-dist/scripts/latexindent
cd /usr/local/bin && \
    curl -L https://cpanmin.us/ -o cpanm && \
    chmod +x cpanm
cpanm -n App::cpanminus
cpanm -n File::HomeDir
cpanm -n Params::ValidationCompiler
cpanm -n YAML::Tiny
```

Users of NixOS might like to see <https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/issues/222> for tips.

## A.2.2 Mac

Users of the Macintosh operating system might like to explore the following commands, for example:

```
cmh:~$ brew install perl
cmh:~$ brew install cpanm
cmh:~$
cmh:~$ cpanm YAML::Tiny
cmh:~$ cpanm File::HomeDir
```

## A.2.3 Windows

Strawberry Perl users on Windows might use CPAN client. All of the modules are readily available on CPAN [24].

`indent.log` will contain details of the location of the Perl modules on your system. `latexindent.exe` is a standalone executable for Windows (and therefore does not require a Perl distribution) and caches copies of the Perl modules onto your system; if you wish to see where they are cached, use the `trace` option, e.g

```
C:\Users\cmh>latexindent.exe -t myfile.tex
```

## A.3 The GCString switch

If you find that the `lookForAlignDelims` (as in Section 5.5) does not work correctly for your language, then you may wish to use the `Unicode::GCString` module.

This can be loaded by calling `latexindent.pl` with the `GCString` switch as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl --GCString myfile.tex
```

In this case, you will need to have the `Unicode::GCString` installed in your perl distribution by using, for example,



```
cmh:~$ cpanm YAML::Tiny
```

Note: this switch does *nothing* for `latexindent.exe` which loads the module by default. Users of `latexindent.exe` should not see any difference in behaviour whether they use this switch or not, as `latexindent.exe` loads the `Unicode::GCString` module.

## SECTION B



# Updating the path variable

`latexindent.pl` has a few scripts (available at [28]) that can update the path variables. Thank you to [6] for this feature. If you're on a Linux or Mac machine, then you'll want `CMakeLists.txt` from [28].

### B.1 Add to path for Linux

To add `latexindent.pl` to the path for Linux, follow these steps:

1. download `latexindent.pl` and its associated modules, `defaultSettings.yaml`, to your chosen directory from [28];
2. within your directory, create a directory called `path-helper-files` and download `CMakeLists.txt` and `cmake_uninstall.cmake.in` from [28]/`path-helper-files` to this directory;
3. run

```
cmh:~$ ls /usr/local/bin
```

to see what is *currently* in there;

4. run the following commands

```
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get update
cmh:~$ sudo apt-get install --no-install-recommends cmake make # or any
other generator
cmh:~$ mkdir build && cd build
cmh:~$ cmake ../path-helper-files
cmh:~$ sudo make install
```

5. run

```
cmh:~$ ls /usr/local/bin
```

again to check that `latexindent.pl`, its modules and `defaultSettings.yaml` have been added.

To *remove* the files, run

```
cmh:~$ sudo make uninstall
```

### B.2 Add to path for Windows

To add `latexindent.exe` to the path for Windows, follow these steps:

1. download `latexindent.exe`, `defaultSettings.yaml`, `add-to-path.bat` from [28] to your chosen directory;
2. open a command prompt and run the following command to see what is *currently* in your `%path%` variable;



```
C:\Users\cmh>echo %path%
```

3. right click on `add-to-path.bat` and *Run as administrator*;
4. log out, and log back in;
5. open a command prompt and run

```
C:\Users\cmh>echo %path%
```

to check that the appropriate directory has been added to your `%path%`.

To *remove* the directory from your `%path%`, run `remove-from-path.bat` as administrator.

# SECTION C



## Batches of files

N: 2022-03-25

You can instruct `latexindent.pl` to operate on multiple files. For example, the following calls are all valid

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile1.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile1.tex myfile2.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile*.tex
```

We note the following features of the script in relation to the switches detailed in Section 3.

### C.1 location of indent.log

If the `-c` switch is *not* active, then `indent.log` goes to the directory of the final file called.

If the `-c` switch is active, then `indent.log` goes to the specified directory.

### C.2 interaction with -w switch

If the `-w` switch is active, as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -w myfile*.tex
```

then files will be overwritten individually. Back-up files can be re-directed via the `-c` switch.

### C.3 interaction with -o switch

If `latexindent.pl` is called using the `-o` switch as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile*.tex -o=my-output-file.tex
```

and there are multiple files to operate upon, then the `-o` switch is ignored because there is only *one* output file specified.

More generally, if the `-o` switch does *not* have a `+` symbol at the beginning, then the `-o` switch will be ignored, and is turned off.

For example

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile*.tex -o+=myfile
```

will work fine because *each* `.tex` file will output to `<basename>myfile.tex`

Similarly,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile*.tex -o=++
```

will work because the ‘existence check/incrementation’ routine will be applied.



#### C.4 interaction with lines switch

This behaves as expected by attempting to operate on the line numbers specified for each file. See the examples in Section 8.

#### C.5 interaction with check switches

The exit codes for `latexindent.pl` are given in Table 1 on page 19.

When operating on multiple files with the check switch active, as in

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile*.tex --check
```

then

- exit code 0 means that the text from *none* of the files has been changed;
- exit code 1 means that the text from *at least one* of the files been file changed.

The interaction with `checkv` switch is as in the check switch, but with verbose output.

#### C.6 when a file does not exist

What happens if one of the files can not be operated upon?

- if at least one of the files does not exist and `latexindent.pl` has been called to act upon multiple files, then the exit code is 3; note that `latexindent.pl` will try to operate on each file that it is called upon, and will not exit with a fatal message in this case;
- if at least one of the files can not be read and `latexindent.pl` has been called to act upon multiple files, then the exit code is 4; note that `latexindent.pl` will try to operate on each file that it is called upon, and will not exit with a fatal message in this case;
- if `latexindent.pl` has been told to operate on multiple files, and some do not exist and some cannot be read, then the exit code will be either 3 or 4, depending upon which it scenario it encountered most recently.

## SECTION D



# latexindent-yaml-schema.json

N: 2022-01-02

`latexindent.pl` ships with `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` which might help you when constructing your YAML files.

### D.1 VSCode demonstration

To use `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` with VSCode, you can use the following steps:

1. download `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` from the documentation folder of [28], save it in whichever directory you would like, noting it for reference;
2. following the instructions from [29], for example, you should install the VSCode YAML extension [41];
3. set up your `settings.json` file using the directory you saved the file by adapting Listing 537; on my Ubuntu laptop this file lives at `/home/cmhughes/.config/Code/User/settings.json`.

LISTING 537: `settings.json`

```
{
  "yaml.schemas": {
    "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/documentation/latexindent-yaml-schema.json":
      "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/defaultSettings.yaml"
  },
  "redhat.telemetry.enabled": true
}
```

Alternatively, if you would prefer not to download the json file, you might be able to use an adapted version of Listing 538.

LISTING 538: `settings-alt.json`

```
{
  "yaml.schemas": {
    "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl/main/documentation/latexindent-yaml-schema.json":
      "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/defaultSettings.yaml"
  }
}
```

Finally, if your TeX distribution is up to date, then `latexindent-yaml-schema.json` *should* be in the documentation folder of your installation, so an adapted version of Listing 539 may work.

LISTING 539: `settings-alt1.json`

```
{
  "yaml.schemas": {
    "/usr/local/texlive/2021/texmf-dist/doc/support/latexindent/latexindent-yaml-schema.json":
      "/home/cmhughes/projects/latexindent/defaultSettings.yaml"
  }
}
```

If you have details of how to implement this schema in other editors, please feel encouraged to contribute to this documentation.



## SECTION E



# Using conda

If you use conda you'll only need

```
cmh:~$ conda install latexindent.pl -c conda-forge
```

this will install the executable and all its dependencies (including perl) in the activate environment. You don't even have to worry about `defaultSettings.yaml` as it included too, you can thus skip appendices [A](#) and [B](#).

You can get a conda installation for example from [\[23\]](#) or from [\[22\]](#).

### E.1 Sample conda installation on Ubuntu

On Ubuntu I followed the 64-bit installation instructions at [\[30\]](#) and then I ran the following commands:

```
cmh:~$ conda create -n latexindent.pl
cmh:~$ conda activate latexindent.pl
cmh:~$ conda install latexindent.pl -c conda-forge
cmh:~$ conda info --envs
cmh:~$ conda list
cmh:~$ conda run latexindent.pl -vv
```

I found the details given at [\[36\]](#) to be helpful.

# SECTION F



## pre-commit

N: 2022-01-21

Users of `.git` may be interested in exploring the `pre-commit` tool [35], which is supported by `latexindent.pl`. Thank you to [19] for contributing this feature, and to [20] for their contribution to it.

To use the `pre-commit` tool, you will need to install `pre-commit`; sample instructions for Ubuntu are given in appendix E1. Once installed, there are two ways to use `pre-commit`: using CPAN or using `conda`, detailed in appendix E3 and appendix E4 respectively.

### E1 Sample pre-commit installation on Ubuntu

On Ubuntu I ran the following command:

```
cmh:~$ python3 -m pip install pre-commit
```

I then updated my path via `.bashrc` so that it includes the line in Listing 540.

LISTING 540: `.bashrc` update

```
...
export PATH=$PATH:/home/cmhughes/.local/bin
```

### E2 pre-commit defaults

The default values that are employed by `pre-commit` are shown in Listing 541.

LISTING 541: `.pre-commit-hooks.yaml` (default)

```
- id: latexindent
  name: latexindent.pl
  description: Run latexindent.pl (get dependencies using CPAN)
  minimum_pre_commit_version: 2.1.0
  entry: latexindent.pl
  args: ["--overwriteIfDifferent", "--silent", "--local"]
  language: perl
  types: [tex]
- id: latexindent-conda
  name: latexindent.pl
  description: Run latexindent.pl (get dependencies using Conda)
  minimum_pre_commit_version: 2.1.0
  entry: latexindent.pl
  args: ["--overwriteIfDifferent", "--silent", "--local"]
  language: conda
  types: [tex]
```

In particular, the decision has deliberately been made (in collaboration with [20]) to have the default to employ the following switches: `overwriteIfDifferent`, `silent`, `local`; this is detailed in the lines that specify `args` in Listing 541.

**Warning!**

Users of pre-commit will, by default, have the `overwriteIfDifferent` switch employed. It is assumed that such users have version control in place, and are intending to overwrite their files.

**E3 pre-commit using CPAN**

To use `latexindent.pl` with pre-commit, create the file `.pre-commit-config.yaml` given in Listing 542 in your git-repository.

LISTING 542: `.pre-commit-config.yaml` (cpan)

```
- repo: https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl
  rev: V3.17.2
  hooks:
  - id: latexindent
    args: [-s]
```

Once created, you should then be able to run the following command:

```
cmh:~$ pre-commit run --all-files
```

A few notes about Listing 542:

- the settings given in Listing 542 instruct pre-commit to use CPAN to get dependencies;
- this requires pre-commit and perl to be installed on your system;
- the `args` lists selected command-line options; the settings in Listing 542 are equivalent to calling

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -s myfile.tex
```

for each `.tex` file in your repository;

- to instruct `latexindent.pl` to overwrite the files in your repository, then you can update Listing 542 so that `args: [-s, -w]`.

Naturally you can add options, or omit `-s` and `-w`, according to your preference.

**E4 pre-commit using conda**

You can also rely on conda (detailed in appendix E) instead of CPAN for all dependencies, including `latexindent.pl` itself.

LISTING 543: `.pre-commit-config.yaml` (conda)

```
- repo: https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl
  rev: V3.17.2
  hooks:
  - id: latexindent-conda
    args: [-s]
```

Once created, you should then be able to run the following command:

```
cmh:~$ pre-commit run --all-files
```

A few notes about Listing 543:

- the settings given in Listing 543 instruct pre-commit to use conda to get dependencies;



- this requires `pre-commit` and `conda` to be installed on your system;
- the `args` lists selected command-line options; the settings in Listing 542 are equivalent to calling

```
cmh:~$ conda run latexindent.pl -s myfile.tex
```

for each `.tex` file in your repository;

- to instruct `latexindent.pl` to overwrite the files in your repository, then you can update Listing 542 so that `args`: `[-s, -w]`.

## E5 pre-commit example using -l, -m switches

Let's consider a small example, with local `latexindent.pl` settings in `.latexindent.yaml`.

**Example 40** We use the local settings given in Listing 544.

LISTING 544: `.latexindent.yaml`

```
onlyOneBackUp: 1

modifyLineBreaks:
  oneSentencePerLine:
    manipulateSentences: 1
```

and `.pre-commit-config.yaml` as in Listing 545:

LISTING 545: `.pre-commit-config.yaml` (demo)

```
- repo: https://github.com/cmhughes/latexindent.pl
  rev: V3.17.2
  hooks:
  - id: latexindent
    args: [-l, -m, -s, -w]
```

Now running

```
cmh:~$ pre-commit run --all-files
```

is equivalent to running

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -l -m -s -w myfile.tex
```

for each `.tex` file in your repository.

A few notes about Listing 545:

- the `-l` option was added to use the local `.latexindent.yaml` (where it was specified to only create one back-up file, as `git` typically takes care of this when you use `pre-commit`);
- `-m` to modify line breaks; in addition to `-s` to suppress command-line output, and `-w` to format files in place.

## SECTION G



# logFilePreferences

Listing 33 on page 25 describes the options for customising the information given to the log file, and we provide a few demonstrations here. Let's say that we start with the code given in Listing 546, and the settings specified in Listing 547.

LISTING 546: simple.tex

```
\begin{myenv}  
  body of myenv  
\end{myenv}
```

LISTING 547: logfile-prefs1.yaml

```
logFilePreferences:  
  showDecorationStartCodeBlockTrace: "+++++"  
  showDecorationFinishCodeBlockTrace: "-----"
```

If we run the following command (noting that `-t` is active)

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -t -l=logfile-prefs1.yaml simple.tex
```

then on inspection of `indent.log` we will find the snippet given in Listing 548.

LISTING 548: indent.log

```
+++++  
TRACE: environment found: myenv  
      No ancestors found for myenv  
      Storing settings for myenvenvironments  
      indentRulesGlobal specified (0) for environments, ...  
      Using defaultIndent for myenv  
      Putting linebreak after replacementText for myenv  
      looking for COMMANDS and key = {value}  
TRACE: Searching for commands with optional and/or mandatory arguments AND key =  
      {value}  
      looking for SPECIAL begin/end  
TRACE: Searching myenv for special begin/end (see specialBeginEnd)  
TRACE: Searching myenv for optional and mandatory arguments  
      ... no arguments found  
-----
```

Notice that the information given about `myenv` is 'framed' using `+++++` and `-----` respectively.

## SECTION H



# Encoding indentconfig.yaml

In relation to Section 4 on page 20, Windows users that encounter encoding issues with `indentconfig.yaml`, may wish to run the following command in either `cmd.exe` or `powershell.exe`:

```
C:\Users\cmh>chcp
```

They may receive the following result

```
C:\Users\cmh>Active code page: 936
```

and can then use the settings given in Listing 549 within their `indentconfig.yaml`, where 936 is the result of the `chcp` command.

LISTING 549: encoding demonstration for `indentconfig.yaml`

```
encoding: cp936
```

# SECTION I



## dos2unix linebreak adjustment

`dos2unixlinebreaks: <integer>`

N: 2021-06-19

If you use `latexindent.pl` on a dos-based Windows file on Linux then you may find that trailing horizontal space is not removed as you hope.

In such a case, you may wish to try setting `dos2unixlinebreaks` to 1 and employing, for example, the following command.

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -y="dos2unixlinebreaks:1" myfile.tex
```

See [42] for further details.

## SECTION J



### Differences from Version 2.2 to 3.0

There are a few (small) changes to the interface when comparing Version 2.2 to Version 3.0. Explicitly, in previous versions you might have run, for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o myfile.tex outputfile.tex
```

whereas in Version 3.0 you would run any of the following, for example,

```
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o=outputfile.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl -o outputfile.tex myfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o outputfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -o=outputfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -outfile=outputfile.tex
cmh:~$ latexindent.pl myfile.tex -outfile outputfile.tex
```

noting that the *output* file is given *next to* the `-o` switch.

The fields given in Listing 550 are *obsolete* from Version 3.0 onwards.

LISTING 550: Obsolete YAML fields from Version 3.0

```
alwaysLookforSplitBrackets
alwaysLookforSplitBrackets
checkunmatched
checkunmatchedELSE
checkunmatchedbracket
constructIfElseFi
```

There is a slight difference when specifying indentation after headings; specifically, we now write `indentAfterThisHeading` instead of `indent`. See Listings 551 and 552

LISTING 551:

indentAfterThisHeading in Version  
2.2

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  part:
    indent: 0
    level: 1
```

LISTING 552:

indentAfterThisHeading in Version  
3.0

```
indentAfterHeadings:
  part:
    indentAfterThisHeading: 0
    level: 1
```

To specify `noAdditionalIndent` for display-math environments in Version 2.2, you would write YAML as in Listing 553; as of Version 3.0, you would write YAML as in Listing 554 or, if you're using `-m` switch, Listing 555.





LISTING 553: noAdditionalIndent in  
Version 2.2

```
noAdditionalIndent:  
  \[: 0  
  \]: 0
```

LISTING 554: noAdditionalIndent for  
displayMath in Version 3.0

```
specialBeginEnd:  
  displayMath:  
    begin: '\\\\['  
    end: '\\\\]'  
    lookForThis: 0
```

LISTING 555: noAdditionalIndent for  
displayMath in Version 3.0

```
noAdditionalIndent:  
  displayMath: 1
```

*End*





# Listings

★ ★ LISTING 1: quick-start.tex .....	6	LISTING 42: noIndentBlock1.tex .....	27
★ ★ LISTING 2: quick-start-default.tex .....	6	LISTING 43: noindent1.yaml .....	28
★ ★ LISTING 3: quick-start1.yaml .....	6	LISTING 44: noindent2.yaml .....	28
★ ★ LISTING 4: quick-start-mod1.tex .....	6	LISTING 45: noindent3.yaml .....	28
★ ★ LISTING 5: quick-start2.yaml .....	7	LISTING 46: noIndentBlock1.tex using Listing 43 or Listing 44 .....	28
★ ★ LISTING 6: quick-start-mod2.tex .....	7	LISTING 47: noIndentBlock1.tex using Listing 45 ...	28
★ ★ LISTING 7: quick-start3.yaml .....	7	LISTING 48: nameAsRegex5.yaml .....	29
★ ★ LISTING 8: quick-start-mod3.tex .....	7	LISTING 49: nameAsRegex6.yaml .....	29
★ ★ LISTING 9: quick-start4.yaml .....	7	LISTING 50: fileContentsEnvironments .....	29
★ ★ LISTING 10: quick-start-mod4.tex .....	7	LISTING 51: lookForPreamble .....	29
★ ★ LISTING 11: quick-start5.yaml .....	8	LISTING 52: Motivating preambleCommandsBeforeEnvironments 30	
★ ★ LISTING 12: quick-start-mod5.tex .....	8	LISTING 53: removeTrailingWhitespace .....	30
★ ★ LISTING 13: quick-start6.yaml .....	8	LISTING 56: tabular1.tex .....	31
★ ★ LISTING 14: quick-start-mod6.tex .....	8	LISTING 57: tabular1.tex default output .....	31
★ ★ LISTING 15: quick-start7.yaml .....	8	LISTING 58: lookForAlignDelims (advanced) .....	31
★ ★ LISTING 16: quick-start-mod7.tex .....	8	LISTING 59: tabular2.tex .....	32
LISTING 17: Possible error messages .....	9	LISTING 60: tabular2.yaml .....	32
LISTING 18: demo-tex.tex .....	9	LISTING 61: tabular3.yaml .....	32
LISTING 19: fileExtensionPreference .....	9	LISTING 62: tabular4.yaml .....	32
LISTING 20: modifyLineBreaks .....	9	LISTING 63: tabular5.yaml .....	32
LISTING 21: replacements .....	9	LISTING 64: tabular6.yaml .....	32
LISTING 22: filecontents1.tex .....	11	LISTING 65: tabular7.yaml .....	32
LISTING 23: filecontents1.tex default output .....	11	LISTING 66: tabular8.yaml .....	32
LISTING 24: tikzset.tex .....	11	LISTING 67: tabular2.tex default output .....	33
LISTING 25: tikzset.tex default output .....	11	LISTING 68: tabular2.tex using Listing 60 .....	33
LISTING 26: pstricks.tex .....	11	LISTING 69: tabular2.tex using Listing 61 .....	33
LISTING 27: pstricks.tex default output .....	11	LISTING 70: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 62 ..	33
LISTING 30: The encoding option for indentconfig.yaml .....	21	LISTING 71: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 63 ..	34
LISTING 32: fileExtensionPreference .....	24	LISTING 72: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 64 ..	34
LISTING 33: logFilePreferences .....	25	LISTING 73: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 65 ..	34
LISTING 34: verbatimEnvironments .....	26	LISTING 74: tabular2.tex using Listings 60 and 66 ..	34
LISTING 35: verbatimCommands .....	26	LISTING 75: aligned1.tex .....	35
LISTING 36: nameAsRegex1.yaml .....	26	LISTING 76: aligned1-default.tex .....	35
LISTING 37: nameAsRegex2.yaml .....	26	LISTING 77: sba1.yaml .....	35
LISTING 38: nameAsRegex3.yaml .....	27	LISTING 78: sba2.yaml .....	35
LISTING 39: nameAsRegex4.yaml .....	27	LISTING 79: sba3.yaml .....	35
LISTING 40: noIndentBlock .....	27	LISTING 80: sba4.yaml .....	35
LISTING 41: noIndentBlock.tex .....	27	LISTING 81: aligned1-mod1.tex .....	36
		LISTING 82: sba5.yaml .....	36



LISTING 83: <code>sba6.yaml</code> .....	36	LISTING 131: <code>specialLR.tex</code> .....	43
LISTING 84: <code>aligned1-mod5.tex</code> .....	36	LISTING 132: <code>specialsLeftRight.yaml</code> .....	43
LISTING 85: <code>aligned1.tex</code> using Listing 86 .....	36	LISTING 133: <code>specialBeforeCommand.yaml</code> .....	43
LISTING 86: <code>sba7.yaml</code> .....	36	LISTING 134: <code>specialLR.tex</code> using Listing 132 .....	44
LISTING 87: <code>tabular4.tex</code> .....	37	LISTING 135: <code>specialLR.tex</code> using Listings 132 and 133 .....	44
LISTING 88: <code>tabular4-default.tex</code> .....	37	LISTING 136: <code>special2.tex</code> .....	44
LISTING 89: <code>tabular4-FDBS.tex</code> .....	37	LISTING 137: <code>middle.yaml</code> .....	44
LISTING 90: <code>matrix1.tex</code> .....	37	LISTING 138: <code>special2.tex</code> using Listing 137 .....	44
LISTING 91: <code>matrix1.tex</code> default output .....	37	LISTING 139: <code>middle1.yaml</code> .....	45
LISTING 92: <code>align-block.tex</code> .....	37	LISTING 140: <code>special2.tex</code> using Listing 139 .....	45
LISTING 93: <code>align-block.tex</code> default output .....	37	LISTING 141: <code>special-verb1.yaml</code> .....	45
LISTING 94: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> .....	38	LISTING 142: <code>special3.tex</code> and output using List- ing 141 .....	45
LISTING 95: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> default output .....	38	LISTING 143: <code>special-align.tex</code> .....	45
LISTING 96: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 97 .....	38	LISTING 144: <code>edge-node1.yaml</code> .....	46
LISTING 97: <code>dontMeasure1.yaml</code> .....	38	LISTING 145: <code>special-align.tex</code> using Listing 144 ..	46
LISTING 98: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 99 or List- ing 101 .....	38	LISTING 146: <code>edge-node2.yaml</code> .....	46
LISTING 99: <code>dontMeasure2.yaml</code> .....	38	LISTING 147: <code>special-align.tex</code> using Listing 146 ..	46
LISTING 100: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 101 or Listing 101 .....	39	LISTING 148: <code>indentAfterHeadings</code> .....	47
LISTING 101: <code>dontMeasure3.yaml</code> .....	39	LISTING 149: <code>headings1.yaml</code> .....	47
LISTING 102: <code>dontMeasure4.yaml</code> .....	39	LISTING 150: <code>headings1.tex</code> .....	47
LISTING 103: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 104 .....	39	LISTING 151: <code>headings1.tex</code> using Listing 149 .....	47
LISTING 104: <code>dontMeasure5.yaml</code> .....	39	LISTING 152: <code>headings1.tex</code> second modification ...	47
LISTING 105: <code>tabular-DM.tex</code> using Listing 106 .....	39	LISTING 153: <code>mult-nested.tex</code> .....	48
LISTING 106: <code>dontMeasure6.yaml</code> .....	39	LISTING 154: <code>mult-nested.tex</code> default output .....	48
LISTING 107: <code>tabbing.tex</code> .....	40	LISTING 155: <code>max-indentation1.yaml</code> .....	48
LISTING 108: <code>tabbing.tex</code> default output .....	40	LISTING 156: <code>mult-nested.tex</code> using Listing 155 ...	48
LISTING 109: <code>tabbing.tex</code> using Listing 110 .....	40	LISTING 157: <code>myenv.tex</code> .....	50
LISTING 110: <code>delimiterRegEx1.yaml</code> .....	40	LISTING 158: <code>myenv-noAdd1.yaml</code> .....	51
LISTING 111: <code>tabbing.tex</code> using Listing 112 .....	40	LISTING 159: <code>myenv-noAdd2.yaml</code> .....	51
LISTING 112: <code>delimiterRegEx2.yaml</code> .....	40	LISTING 160: <code>myenv.tex</code> output (using either List- ing 158 or Listing 159) .....	51
LISTING 113: <code>tabbing.tex</code> using Listing 114 .....	41	LISTING 161: <code>myenv-noAdd3.yaml</code> .....	51
LISTING 114: <code>delimiterRegEx3.yaml</code> .....	41	LISTING 162: <code>myenv-noAdd4.yaml</code> .....	51
LISTING 115: <code>tabbing1.tex</code> .....	41	LISTING 163: <code>myenv.tex</code> output (using either List- ing 161 or Listing 162) .....	51
LISTING 116: <code>tabbing1-mod4.tex</code> .....	41	LISTING 164: <code>myenv-args.tex</code> .....	52
LISTING 117: <code>delimiterRegEx4.yaml</code> .....	41	LISTING 165: <code>myenv-args.tex</code> using Listing 158 .....	52
LISTING 118: <code>tabbing1-mod5.tex</code> .....	41	LISTING 166: <code>myenv-noAdd5.yaml</code> .....	52
LISTING 119: <code>delimiterRegEx5.yaml</code> .....	41	LISTING 167: <code>myenv-noAdd6.yaml</code> .....	52
LISTING 120: <code>tabular-DM-1.tex</code> .....	42	LISTING 168: <code>myenv-args.tex</code> using Listing 166 .....	53
LISTING 121: <code>tabular-DM-1-mod1.tex</code> .....	42	LISTING 169: <code>myenv-args.tex</code> using Listing 167 .....	53
LISTING 122: <code>tabular-DM-1-mod1a.tex</code> .....	42	LISTING 170: <code>myenv-rules1.yaml</code> .....	53
LISTING 123: <code>dontMeasure1a.yaml</code> .....	42	LISTING 171: <code>myenv-rules2.yaml</code> .....	53
LISTING 124: <code>indentAfterItems</code> .....	42	LISTING 172: <code>myenv.tex</code> output (using either List- ing 170 or Listing 171) .....	53
LISTING 125: <code>items1.tex</code> .....	42	LISTING 173: <code>myenv-args.tex</code> using Listing 170 .....	54
LISTING 126: <code>items1.tex</code> default output .....	42	LISTING 174: <code>myenv-rules3.yaml</code> .....	54
LISTING 127: <code>itemNames</code> .....	42	LISTING 175: <code>myenv-rules4.yaml</code> .....	54
LISTING 128: <code>specialBeginEnd</code> .....	43	LISTING 176: <code>myenv-args.tex</code> using Listing 174 .....	54
LISTING 129: <code>special1.tex</code> before .....	43		
LISTING 130: <code>special1.tex</code> default output .....	43		



LISTING 177: myenv-args.tex using Listing 175.....	54	LISTING 223: ifelsefi2.tex default output .....	61
LISTING 178: noAdditionalIndentGlobal .....	55	LISTING 224: displayMath-noAdd.yaml .....	62
LISTING 179: myenv-args.tex using Listing 178.....	55	LISTING 225: displayMath-indent-rules.yaml.....	62
LISTING 180: myenv-args.tex using Listings 170 and 178.....	55	LISTING 226: special1.tex using Listing 224.....	62
LISTING 181: opt-args-no-add-glob.yaml .....	55	LISTING 227: special1.tex using Listing 225.....	62
LISTING 182: mand-args-no-add-glob.yaml .....	55	LISTING 228: special-noAdd-glob.yaml .....	62
LISTING 183: myenv-args.tex using Listing 181.....	56	LISTING 229: special-indent-rules-global.yaml 62	
LISTING 184: myenv-args.tex using Listing 182.....	56	LISTING 230: special1.tex using Listing 228.....	62
LISTING 185: indentRulesGlobal .....	56	LISTING 231: special1.tex using Listing 229.....	62
LISTING 186: myenv-args.tex using Listing 185.....	56	LISTING 232: headings2.tex .....	63
LISTING 187: myenv-args.tex using Listings 170 and 185.....	56	LISTING 233: headings2.tex using Listing 234.....	63
LISTING 188: opt-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml ..	56	LISTING 234: headings3.yaml .....	63
LISTING 189: mand-args-indent-rules-glob.yaml 56		LISTING 235: headings2.tex using Listing 236.....	63
LISTING 190: myenv-args.tex using Listing 188.....	57	LISTING 236: headings4.yaml .....	63
LISTING 191: myenv-args.tex using Listing 189.....	57	LISTING 237: headings2.tex using Listing 238.....	63
LISTING 192: item-noAdd1.yaml .....	57	LISTING 238: headings5.yaml .....	63
LISTING 193: item-rules1.yaml .....	57	LISTING 239: headings2.tex using Listing 240.....	64
LISTING 194: items1.tex using Listing 192.....	57	LISTING 240: headings6.yaml .....	64
LISTING 195: items1.tex using Listing 193.....	57	LISTING 241: headings2.tex using Listing 242.....	64
LISTING 196: items-noAdditionalGlobal.yaml.....	58	LISTING 242: headings7.yaml .....	64
LISTING 197: items-indentRulesGlobal.yaml.....	58	LISTING 243: headings2.tex using Listing 244.....	64
LISTING 198: mycommand.tex .....	58	LISTING 244: headings8.yaml .....	64
LISTING 199: mycommand.tex default output .....	58	LISTING 245: headings2.tex using Listing 246.....	64
LISTING 200: mycommand-noAdd1.yaml .....	58	LISTING 246: headings9.yaml .....	64
LISTING 201: mycommand-noAdd2.yaml .....	58	LISTING 247: pgfkeys1.tex .....	65
LISTING 202: mycommand.tex using Listing 200.....	59	LISTING 248: pgfkeys1.tex default output .....	65
LISTING 203: mycommand.tex using Listing 201.....	59	LISTING 249: child1.tex .....	65
LISTING 204: mycommand-noAdd3.yaml .....	59	LISTING 250: child1.tex default output .....	65
LISTING 205: mycommand-noAdd4.yaml .....	59	LISTING 251: psforeach1.tex .....	66
LISTING 206: mycommand.tex using Listing 204.....	59	LISTING 252: psforeach1.tex default output .....	66
LISTING 207: mycommand.tex using Listing 205.....	59	LISTING 253: noAdditionalIndentGlobal .....	66
LISTING 208: mycommand-noAdd5.yaml .....	59	LISTING 254: indentRulesGlobal .....	66
LISTING 209: mycommand-noAdd6.yaml .....	59	LISTING 255: commandCodeBlocks .....	67
LISTING 210: mycommand.tex using Listing 208.....	60	LISTING 256: pstricks1.tex .....	67
LISTING 211: mycommand.tex using Listing 209.....	60	LISTING 257: pstricks1 default output .....	67
LISTING 212: ifelsefi1.tex .....	60	LISTING 258: pstricks1.tex using Listing 259.....	67
LISTING 213: ifelsefi1.tex default output .....	60	LISTING 259: noRoundParentheses.yaml .....	67
LISTING 214: ifnum-noAdd.yaml .....	60	LISTING 260: pstricks1.tex using Listing 261.....	68
LISTING 215: ifnum-indent-rules.yaml .....	60	LISTING 261: defFunction.yaml .....	68
LISTING 216: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 214.....	61	LISTING 262: tikz-node1.tex .....	68
LISTING 217: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 215.....	61	LISTING 263: tikz-node1 default output .....	68
LISTING 218: ifelsefi-noAdd-glob.yaml .....	61	LISTING 264: tikz-node1.tex using Listing 265.....	69
LISTING 219: ifelsefi-indent-rules-global.yaml 61		LISTING 265: draw.yaml .....	69
LISTING 220: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 218.....	61	LISTING 266: tikz-node1.tex using Listing 267.....	69
LISTING 221: ifelsefi1.tex using Listing 219.....	61	LISTING 267: no-strings.yaml .....	69
LISTING 222: ifelsefi2.tex .....	61	LISTING 268: amalgamate-demo.yaml .....	69
		LISTING 269: amalgamate-demo1.yaml .....	69
		LISTING 270: amalgamate-demo2.yaml .....	69
		LISTING 271: amalgamate-demo3.yaml .....	70



LISTING 272: <code>for-each.tex</code> .....	70	LISTING 321: <code>textwrap4-mod2B.tex</code> .....	83
LISTING 273: <code>for-each</code> default output .....	70	LISTING 322: <code>textwrap2B.yaml</code> .....	83
LISTING 274: <code>for-each.tex</code> using Listing 275 .....	70	LISTING 323: <code>textwrap-ts.tex</code> .....	83
LISTING 275: <code>foreach.yaml</code> .....	70	LISTING 324: <code>tabstop.yaml</code> .....	83
LISTING 276: <code>ifnextchar.tex</code> .....	70	LISTING 325: <code>textwrap-ts-mod1.tex</code> .....	83
LISTING 277: <code>ifnextchar.tex</code> default output .....	70	LISTING 326: <code>oneSentencePerLine</code> .....	84
LISTING 278: <code>ifnextchar.tex</code> using Listing 279 .....	71	LISTING 327: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> .....	84
LISTING 279: <code>no-ifnextchar.yaml</code> .....	71	LISTING 328: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 329 .....	85
LISTING 280: <code>modifyLineBreaks</code> .....	73	LISTING 329: <code>manipulate-sentences.yaml</code> .....	85
LISTING 281: <code>mlb1.tex</code> .....	73	LISTING 330: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 331 .....	85
LISTING 282: <code>mlb1-mod1.tex</code> .....	73	LISTING 331: <code>keep-sen-line-breaks.yaml</code> .....	85
LISTING 283: <code>textWrapOptions</code> .....	74	LISTING 332: <code>sentencesFollow</code> .....	86
LISTING 284: <code>textwrap1.tex</code> .....	75	LISTING 333: <code>sentencesBeginWith</code> .....	86
LISTING 285: <code>textwrap1-mod1.tex</code> .....	75	LISTING 334: <code>sentencesEndWith</code> .....	86
LISTING 286: <code>textwrap1.yaml</code> .....	75	LISTING 335: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 336 .....	86
LISTING 287: <code>textwrap1A.yaml</code> .....	75	LISTING 336: <code>sentences-follow1.yaml</code> .....	86
LISTING 288: <code>textwrap1-mod1A.tex</code> .....	75	LISTING 337: <code>multiple-sentences1.tex</code> .....	86
LISTING 289: <code>textwrap1B.yaml</code> .....	76	LISTING 338: <code>multiple-sentences1.tex</code> using Listing 329 on page 85 .....	86
LISTING 290: <code>textwrap1-mod1B.tex</code> .....	76	LISTING 339: <code>multiple-sentences1.tex</code> using Listing 340 .....	87
LISTING 291: <code>tw-headings1.tex</code> .....	76	LISTING 340: <code>sentences-follow2.yaml</code> .....	87
LISTING 292: <code>tw-headings1-mod1.tex</code> .....	76	LISTING 341: <code>multiple-sentences2.tex</code> .....	87
LISTING 293: <code>bf-no-headings.yaml</code> .....	77	LISTING 342: <code>multiple-sentences2.tex</code> using Listing 329 on page 85 .....	87
LISTING 294: <code>tw-headings1-mod2.tex</code> .....	77	LISTING 343: <code>multiple-sentences2.tex</code> using Listing 344 .....	87
LISTING 295: <code>tw-comments1.tex</code> .....	77	LISTING 344: <code>sentences-begin1.yaml</code> .....	87
LISTING 296: <code>tw-comments1-mod1.tex</code> .....	77	LISTING 345: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 346 .....	88
LISTING 297: <code>bf-no-comments.yaml</code> .....	78	LISTING 346: <code>sentences-end1.yaml</code> .....	88
LISTING 298: <code>tw-comments1-mod2.tex</code> .....	78	LISTING 347: <code>multiple-sentences.tex</code> using Listing 348 .....	88
LISTING 299: <code>tw-disp-math1.tex</code> .....	78	LISTING 348: <code>sentences-end2.yaml</code> .....	88
LISTING 300: <code>tw-disp-math1-mod1.tex</code> .....	78	LISTING 349: <code>url.tex</code> .....	88
LISTING 301: <code>bf-no-disp-math.yaml</code> .....	79	LISTING 350: <code>url.tex</code> using Listing 329 on page 85 .....	88
LISTING 302: <code>tw-disp-math1-mod2.tex</code> .....	79	LISTING 351: <code>url.tex</code> using Listing 352 .....	89
LISTING 303: <code>tw-bf-myenv1.tex</code> .....	79	LISTING 352: <code>alt-full-stop1.yaml</code> .....	89
LISTING 304: <code>tw-bf-myenv1-mod1.tex</code> .....	79	LISTING 353: <code>multiple-sentences3.tex</code> .....	89
LISTING 305: <code>tw-bf-myenv.yaml</code> .....	80	LISTING 354: <code>multiple-sentences3.tex</code> using Listing 329 on page 85 .....	89
LISTING 306: <code>tw-bf-myenv1-mod2.tex</code> .....	80	LISTING 355: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> .....	90
LISTING 307: <code>tw-0-9.tex</code> .....	80	LISTING 356: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> using Listing 329 on page 85 .....	90
LISTING 308: <code>tw-0-9-mod1.tex</code> .....	80	LISTING 357: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> using Listing 331 on page 85 .....	90
LISTING 309: <code>bb-0-9.yaml</code> .....	81	LISTING 358: <code>multiple-sentences4.tex</code> using Listing 359 .....	90
LISTING 310: <code>tw-0-9-mod2.tex</code> .....	81	LISTING 359: <code>item-rules2.yaml</code> .....	90
LISTING 311: <code>tw-bb-announce1.tex</code> .....	81		
LISTING 312: <code>tw-bb-announce1-mod1.tex</code> .....	81		
LISTING 313: <code>tw-bb-announce.yaml</code> .....	81		
LISTING 314: <code>tw-bb-announce1-mod2.tex</code> .....	81		
LISTING 315: <code>tw-be-equation.tex</code> .....	82		
LISTING 316: <code>tw-be-equation-mod1.tex</code> .....	82		
LISTING 317: <code>tw-be-equation.yaml</code> .....	82		
LISTING 318: <code>tw-be-equation-mod2.tex</code> .....	82		
LISTING 319: <code>textwrap4-mod2A.tex</code> .....	83		
LISTING 320: <code>textwrap2A.yaml</code> .....	83		



LISTING 360: multiple-sentences5.tex .....	91	LISTING 406: env-mlb3.tex using Listing 375 on page 94 .....	97
LISTING 361: multiple-sentences5.tex using List- ing 362 .....	91	LISTING 407: env-mlb4.tex .....	97
LISTING 362: sentence-wrap1.yaml .....	91	LISTING 408: env-mlb13.yaml .....	97
LISTING 363: multiple-sentences6.tex .....	91	LISTING 409: env-mlb14.yaml .....	97
LISTING 364: multiple-sentences6-mod1.tex us- ing Listing 362 .....	91	LISTING 410: env-mlb15.yaml .....	97
LISTING 365: multiple-sentences6-mod2.tex us- ing Listing 362 and no sentence indentation .....	92	LISTING 411: env-mlb16.yaml .....	97
LISTING 366: itemize.yaml .....	92	LISTING 412: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 408 .....	98
LISTING 367: multiple-sentences6-mod3.tex us- ing Listing 362 and Listing 366 .....	92	LISTING 413: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 409 .....	98
LISTING 368: environments .....	93	LISTING 414: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 410 .....	98
LISTING 369: env-mlb1.tex .....	93	LISTING 415: env-mlb4.tex using Listing 411 .....	98
LISTING 370: env-mlb1.yaml .....	93	LISTING 416: env-mlb5.tex .....	98
LISTING 371: env-mlb2.yaml .....	93	LISTING 417: removeTWS-before.yaml .....	98
LISTING 372: env-mlb.tex using Listing 370 .....	93	LISTING 418: env-mlb5.tex using Listings 412 to 415 ..	99
LISTING 373: env-mlb.tex using Listing 371 .....	93	LISTING 419: env-mlb5.tex using Listings 412 to 415 and Listing 417 .....	99
LISTING 374: env-mlb3.yaml .....	94	LISTING 420: env-mlb6.tex .....	99
LISTING 375: env-mlb4.yaml .....	94	LISTING 421: UnpreserveBlankLines.yaml .....	99
LISTING 376: env-mlb.tex using Listing 374 .....	94	LISTING 422: env-mlb6.tex using Listings 412 to 415 ..	99
LISTING 377: env-mlb.tex using Listing 375 .....	94	LISTING 423: env-mlb6.tex using Listings 412 to 415 and Listing 421 .....	99
LISTING 378: env-mlb5.yaml .....	94	LISTING 424: env-mlb7.tex .....	99
LISTING 379: env-mlb6.yaml .....	94	LISTING 425: env-mlb7-preserve.tex .....	100
LISTING 380: env-mlb.tex using Listing 378 .....	94	LISTING 426: env-mlb7-no-preserve.tex .....	100
LISTING 381: env-mlb.tex using Listing 379 .....	94	LISTING 427: tabular3.tex .....	100
LISTING 382: env-beg4.yaml .....	94	LISTING 428: tabular3.tex using Listing 429 .....	101
LISTING 383: env-body4.yaml .....	94	LISTING 429: DBS1.yaml .....	101
LISTING 384: env-mlb1.tex .....	94	LISTING 430: tabular3.tex using Listing 431 .....	101
LISTING 385: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 382 .....	95	LISTING 431: DBS2.yaml .....	101
LISTING 386: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 383 .....	95	LISTING 432: tabular3.tex using Listing 433 .....	101
LISTING 387: env-mlb7.yaml .....	95	LISTING 433: DBS3.yaml .....	101
LISTING 388: env-mlb8.yaml .....	95	LISTING 434: tabular3.tex using Listing 435 .....	101
LISTING 389: env-mlb.tex using Listing 387 .....	95	LISTING 435: DBS4.yaml .....	101
LISTING 390: env-mlb.tex using Listing 388 .....	95	LISTING 436: special4.tex .....	102
LISTING 391: env-mlb9.yaml .....	95	LISTING 437: special4.tex using Listing 438 .....	102
LISTING 392: env-mlb10.yaml .....	95	LISTING 438: DBS5.yaml .....	102
LISTING 393: env-mlb.tex using Listing 391 .....	95	LISTING 439: mycommand2.tex .....	102
LISTING 394: env-mlb.tex using Listing 392 .....	95	LISTING 440: mycommand2.tex using Listing 441 .....	103
LISTING 395: env-mlb11.yaml .....	96	LISTING 441: DBS6.yaml .....	103
LISTING 396: env-mlb12.yaml .....	96	LISTING 442: mycommand2.tex using Listing 443 .....	103
LISTING 397: env-mlb.tex using Listing 395 .....	96	LISTING 443: DBS7.yaml .....	103
LISTING 398: env-mlb.tex using Listing 396 .....	96	LISTING 444: pmatrix3.tex .....	103
LISTING 399: env-end4.yaml .....	96	LISTING 445: pmatrix3.tex using Listing 433 .....	103
LISTING 400: env-end-f4.yaml .....	96	LISTING 446: mycommand1.tex .....	105
LISTING 401: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 399 .....	96	LISTING 447: mycommand1.tex using Listing 448 .....	105
LISTING 402: env-mlb1.tex using Listing 400 .....	96	LISTING 448: mycom-mlb1.yaml .....	105
LISTING 403: env-mlb2.tex .....	97	LISTING 449: mycommand1.tex using Listing 450 .....	105
LISTING 404: env-mlb3.tex .....	97	LISTING 450: mycom-mlb2.yaml .....	105
LISTING 405: env-mlb3.tex using Listing 371 on page 93 .....	97	LISTING 451: mycommand1.tex using Listing 452 .....	106
		LISTING 452: mycom-mlb3.yaml .....	106





LISTING 453: mycommand1.tex using Listing 454	106	LISTING 502: myfile-mod1.tex	119
LISTING 454: mycom-mlb4.yaml	106	LISTING 503: myfile-mod2.tex	119
LISTING 455: mycommand1.tex using Listing 456	106	LISTING 504: myfile-mod3.tex	120
LISTING 456: mycom-mlb5.yaml	106	LISTING 505: myfile-mod4.tex	121
LISTING 457: mycommand1.tex using Listing 458	107	LISTING 506: myfile-mod5.tex	121
LISTING 458: mycom-mlb6.yaml	107	LISTING 507: myfile-mod6.tex	122
LISTING 459: nested-env.tex	107	LISTING 508: myfile1.tex	122
LISTING 460: nested-env.tex using Listing 461	107	LISTING 509: myfile1-mod1.tex	123
LISTING 461: nested-env-mlb1.yaml	107	LISTING 510: fineTuning	125
LISTING 462: nested-env.tex using Listing 463	108	LISTING 511: finetuning1.tex	127
LISTING 463: nested-env-mlb2.yaml	108	LISTING 512: finetuning1.tex default	127
LISTING 464: replacements	109	LISTING 513: finetuning1.tex using Listing 514	127
LISTING 465: replace1.tex	110	LISTING 514: finetuning1.yaml	127
LISTING 466: replace1.tex default	110	LISTING 515: finetuning2.tex	127
LISTING 467: replace1.tex using Listing 468	110	LISTING 516: finetuning2.tex default	127
LISTING 468: replace1.yaml	110	LISTING 517: finetuning2.tex using Listing 518	128
LISTING 469: colsep.tex	110	LISTING 518: finetuning2.yaml	128
LISTING 470: colsep.tex using Listing 469	111	LISTING 519: finetuning3.tex	128
LISTING 471: colsep.yaml	111	LISTING 520: finetuning3.tex using -y switch	128
LISTING 472: colsep.tex using Listing 473	111	LISTING 521: finetuning4.tex	128
LISTING 473: colsep1.yaml	111	LISTING 522: href1.yaml	129
LISTING 474: colsep.tex using Listing 475	112	LISTING 523: href2.yaml	129
LISTING 475: multi-line.yaml	112	LISTING 524: finetuning4.tex using Listing 522	129
LISTING 476: colsep.tex using Listing 477	112	LISTING 525: finetuning4.tex using Listing 523	129
LISTING 477: multi-line1.yaml	112	LISTING 526: href3.yaml	130
LISTING 478: displaymath.tex	113	LISTING 527: bib1.bib	130
LISTING 479: displaymath.tex using Listing 480	113	LISTING 528: bib1-mod1.bib	130
LISTING 480: displaymath1.yaml	113	LISTING 529: bib1.bib using Listing 530	130
LISTING 481: displaymath.tex using Listings 480 and 482	114	LISTING 530: bibsettings1.yaml	130
LISTING 482: equation.yaml	114	LISTING 531: bib2.bib	131
LISTING 483: phrase.tex	114	LISTING 532: bib2-mod1.bib	131
LISTING 484: phrase.tex using Listing 485	114	LISTING 533: bibsettings2.yaml	131
LISTING 485: hspace.yaml	114	LISTING 534: bib2-mod2.bib	131
LISTING 486: references.tex	115	LISTING 535: helloworld.pl	136
LISTING 487: references.tex using Listing 488	115	LISTING 536: alpine-install.sh	138
LISTING 488: reference.yaml	115	LISTING 537: settings.json	144
LISTING 489: verb1.tex	115	LISTING 538: settings-alt.json	144
LISTING 490: verbatim1.yaml	115	LISTING 539: settings-alt1.json	144
LISTING 491: verb1-mod1.tex	116	LISTING 540: .bashrc update	146
LISTING 492: verb1-rv-mod1.tex	116	LISTING 541: .pre-commit-hooks.yaml (default)	146
LISTING 493: verb1-rr-mod1.tex	116	LISTING 542: .pre-commit-config.yaml (cpan)	147
LISTING 494: amalg1.tex	116	LISTING 543: .pre-commit-config.yaml (conda)	147
LISTING 495: amalg1-yaml.yaml	116	LISTING 544: .latexindent.yaml	148
LISTING 496: amalg2-yaml.yaml	116	LISTING 545: .pre-commit-config.yaml (demo)	148
LISTING 497: amalg3-yaml.yaml	116	LISTING 546: simple.tex	149
LISTING 498: amalg1.tex using Listing 495	117	LISTING 547: logfile-prefs1.yaml	149
LISTING 499: amalg1.tex using Listings 495 and 496	117	LISTING 548: indent.log	149
LISTING 500: amalg1.tex using Listings 495 to 497	117	LISTING 549: encoding demonstration for indentconfig.yaml	150
LISTING 501: myfile.tex	118	LISTING 550: Obsolete YAML fields from Version 3.0	152



LISTING 551: `indentAfterThisHeading` in Version  
2.2 ..... 152

LISTING 552: `indentAfterThisHeading` in Version  
3.0 ..... 152

LISTING 553: `noAdditionalIndent` in Version 2.2 .... 153

LISTING 554: `noAdditionalIndent` for  
`displayMath` in Version 3.0 ..... 153

LISTING 555: `noAdditionalIndent` for  
`displayMath` in Version 3.0 ..... 153





# Index

## — B —

### backup files

- cycle through, 22
- extension settings, 21
- maximum number of backup files, 22
- number of backup files, 22
- overwrite switch, -w, 10
- overwriteIfDifferent switch, -wd, 10

### bibliography files, 123

## — C —

### capturing parenthesis (regex), 36

### conda, 127, 136, 138

### contributors, 127

### cpan, 128, 138

## — D —

### delimiters, 95

- advanced settings of lookForAlignDelims, 27
- advanced settings, 28
- ampersand &, 28
- default settings of lookForAlignDelims, 28
- delimiter justification (left or right), 36
- delimiterRegEx, 36, 123
- dontMeasure feature, 34
- double backslash demonstration, 33
- lookForAlignDelims, 28
- poly-switches for double back slash, 94
- spacing demonstration, 29
- with specialBeginEnd and the -m switch, 96
- within specialBeginEnd blocks, 42

## — E —

### exit code, 15

- summary, 16

## — G —

### git, 138

## — I —

### indentation

- customising indentation per-code block, 45
- customising per-name, 45
- default, 13
- defaultIndent description, 27
- defaultIndent using -y switch, 13
- defaultIndent using YAML file, 17
- maximum indetation, 44
- no additional indent, 45
- no additional indent global, 45
- removing indentation per-code block, 45

### summary, 62

## — J —

### json

- schema for YAML files, 135

### VSCoDe, 135

## — L —

### latexindent.exe, 9

### linebreaks

- summary of poly-switches, 95

## — M —

### MiKTeX, 9, 127

### modifying linebreaks

- surrounding double back slash, 94
- at the *beginning* of a code block, 87
- at the *end* of a code block, 89
- by using one sentence per line, 78
- using poly-switches, 86

## — P —

### perl

- Unicode GCString module, 129

### poly-switches

- adding comments and then line breaks: set to 2, 89
- adding blank lines (again!): set to 4, 88, 90
- adding blank lines: set to 3, 88, 90
- adding comments and then line breaks: set to 2, 88
- adding line breaks: set to 1, 87, 89
- blank lines, 93
- conflicting partnering, 99
- conflicting switches, 100, 101
- default values, 87
- definition, 86
- double backslash, 95
- environment global example, 87
- environment per-code block example, 87
- for double back slash (delimiters), 95
- for double back slash (delimiters), 94–97
- off by default: set to 0, 86
- removing line breaks: set to -1, 91
- summary of all poly-switches, 97
- values, 86
- visualisation: ♠, ♥, ♦, ♣, 87

### pre-commit, 127

### conda, 138

### cpan, 138

### default, 137



warning, 137

## — R —

### regular expressions

character class demonstration, 123  
horizontal space `\h`, 109  
substitution field, arraycolsep, 105  
substitution field, equation, 107

### regular expressions

capturing parenthesis, 36  
delimiter regex at `\=` or `\>`, 36  
delimiter regex at only `\>`, 37  
dontMeasure feature, cell, 35  
dontMeasure feature, row, 36  
fine tuning, 118  
ifElseFi, 118  
keyEqualsValuesBracesBrackets, 118  
lowercase alph a-z, 35, 82, 86  
NamedGroupingBracesBrackets, 118  
UnnamedGroupingBracesBrackets, 118  
uppercase alph A-Z, 79

### regular expressions

a word about, 7  
ampersand alignment, 123  
ampersand alignment, 28  
arguments, 118  
at least one +, 108  
at least one +, 42, 105, 118, 120, 121  
capturing parenthesis, 123  
commands, 118  
delimiter regex at #, 37  
delimiter alignment for edge or node, 42  
delimiter regex at # or `\>`, 38  
delimiterRegex, 28, 123  
environments, 118  
horizontal space `\h`, 118  
horizontal space `\h`, 86  
horizontal space `\h`, 42, 45, 108  
lowercase alph a-z, 118  
lowercase alph a-z, 36, 45, 78, 79  
modifyLineBreaks, 118  
numeric 0-9, 118  
numeric 0-9, 42, 45, 81, 86  
replacement switch, -r, 104  
text wrap  
    blocksFollow, 72, 73, 75  
uppercase alph A-Z, 78  
uppercase alph A-Z, 42, 45, 86, 118  
using -y switch, 19

## — S —

### sentences

begin with, 79  
begin with, 81  
end with, 79, 81  
follow, 79, 80  
indenting, 84  
one sentence per line, 78  
oneSentencePerLine, 78  
removing sentence line breaks, 78  
text wrapping, 84

### specialBeginEnd

alignment at delimiter, 42

combined with lookForAlignDelims, 42

default settings, 39

delimiterRegex, 42

delimiterRegex tweaked, 42

double backslash poly-switch demonstration, 95

IfElseFi example, 40

indentRules example, 57

indentRulesGlobal, 62

introduction, 39

lookForAlignDelims, 95

middle, 40

noAdditionalIndent, 57

noAdditionalIndentGlobal, 62

poly-switch summary, 97

searching for special before commands, 40

specifying as verbatim, 42

tikz example, 42

update to displaymath V3.0, 143

### switches

-GCString, 16

-GCString demonstration, 129

-c, -cruft definition and details, 13

-d, -onlydefault definition and details, 13

-g, -logfile definition and details, 14

-h, -help definition and details, 9

-k, -check definition and details, 15

-kv, -checkv definition and details, 15

-l demonstration, 94, 95, 97, 104–107, 121

-l demonstration, 19, 29, 35, 37, 44, 51, 85, 100

-l demonstration, 18, 34–38, 40–42, 44, 47–58, 63–65, 77, 78, 80–93, 95, 96, 99–102, 104–110

-l in relation to other settings, 19

-l, -local definition and details, 12

-lines demonstration, 112

-lines demonstration, negation, 115, 116

-m demonstration, 88, 90–93

-m demonstration, 80–82, 99, 100

-m demonstration, 67, 77, 78, 80, 81, 83–87, 89, 92, 94–97, 100–102, 107

-m, -modifylinebreaks definition and details, 14

-n, -lines definition and details, 16

-o demonstration, 37

-o demonstration, 33, 38, 42, 77, 109, 143

-o, -output definition and details, 10

-r demonstration, 107, 109, 110

-r demonstration, 103

-r demonstration, 104–109

-r, -replacement definition and details, 15

-rr demonstration, 106, 109

-rr, -onlyreplacement definition and details, 15

-rv demonstration, 109

-rv, -replacementrespectverb definition and details, 15

-s, -silent definition and details, 11

-sl, -screenlog definition and details, 14

-t, -trace definition and details, 11

-tt, -ttrace definition and details, 12

-v, -version definition and details, 9



- vv, -vversion definition and details, 9
- w, -overwrite definition and details, 10
- wd, -overwriteIfDifferent definition and details, 10
- y demonstration, 19
- y demonstration, 19, 33, 85
- y, -yaml definition and details, 13

#### — T —

TeXLive, 9

text wrap

- blocksFollow

- comments, 71

- headings, 70

- other, 72, 73, 75

text wrap

- blocksFollow, 70

text wrap

- blocksBeginWith, 74

- blocksEndBefore, 75

- quick start, 69

- setting columns to -1, 69

#### — V —

verbatim

- commands, 23

- comparison with -r and -rr switches, 109

- environments, 23

- in relation to oneSentencePerLine, 83

- noIndentBlock, 24

- poly-switch summary, 97

- rv, replacementrespectverb switch, 15

- rv, replacementrespectverb switch, 103

- specialBeginEnd, 41

- verbatimEnvironments demonstration (-l switch), 19

- verbatimEnvironments demonstration (-y switch), 19

VSCoDe, 127, 135

#### — W —

warning

- amalgamate field, 66

- be sure to test before use, 2

- capture groups, 120

- capturing parenthesis for lookForAlignDelims, 36

- changing huge (textwrap), 76

- editing YAML files, 18

- fine tuning, 118

- pre-commit, 137

- the m switch, 67